

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management



Specification

First teaching from January 2019

First certification from 2021

Issue 4

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management Specification

First teaching September 2019

Issue 4

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications are awarded by Pearson, the UK's largest awarding body offering academic and vocational qualifications that are globally recognised and benchmarked. For further information, please visit our qualifications website at qualifications.pearson.com. Alternatively, you can get in touch with us using the details on our contact us page at qualifications.pearson.com/contactus

About Pearson

Pearson is the world's leading learning company, with 25,000 employees in more than 70 countries working to help people of all ages to make measurable progress in their lives through learning. We put the learner at the centre of everything we do, because wherever learning flourishes, so do people. Find out more about how we can help you and your learners at qualifications.pearson.com

This specification is Issue 4. We will inform centres of any changes to this issue. The latest issue can be found on our website.

References to third-party material made in this specification are made in good faith. We do not endorse, approve or accept responsibility for the content of materials, which may be subject to change, or any opinions expressed therein. (Material may include textbooks, journals, magazines and other publications and websites.)

ISBN 978 1 446 94665 7

All the material in this publication is copyright
© Pearson Education Limited 2021

Welcome

With a track record built over 30 years of learner success, BTEC Nationals are widely recognised by industry and higher education as the signature vocational qualification at Level 3. They provide progression to the workplace either directly or via study at a higher level. Proof comes from YouGov research, which shows that 62 per cent of large companies have recruited employees with BTEC qualifications. What's more, well over 100,000 BTEC students apply to UK universities every year and their BTEC Nationals are accepted by over 150 UK universities and higher education institutes for relevant degree programmes either on their own or in combination with A Levels.

Why are BTECs so successful?

BTECs embody a fundamentally learner-centred approach to the curriculum, with a flexible, unit-based structure and knowledge applied in project-based assessments. They focus on the holistic development of the practical, interpersonal and thinking skills required to be able to succeed in employment and higher education.

When creating the BTEC Nationals in this suite, we worked with many employers, higher education providers, colleges and schools to ensure that their needs are met. Employers are looking for recruits with a thorough grounding in the latest industry requirements and work-ready skills such as teamwork. Higher education needs students who have experience of research, extended writing and meeting deadlines.

We have addressed these requirements with:

- a range of BTEC sizes, each with a clear purpose, so there is something to suit each learner's choice of study programme and progression plans
- refreshed content that is closely aligned with employers' and higher education needs for a skilled future workforce
- assessments and projects chosen to help learners progress to the next stage. This means some are set by you to meet local needs, while others are set and marked by Pearson so that there is a core of skills and understanding that is common to all learners. For example, a written test can be used to check that learners are confident in using technical knowledge to carry out a certain job.

We provide a wealth of support, both resources and people, to ensure that learners and their teachers have the best possible experience during their course. See *Section 10* for details of the support we offer.

A word to learners

Today's BTEC Nationals are demanding, as you would expect of the most respected applied learning qualification in the UK. You will have to choose and complete a range of units, be organised, take some assessments that we will set and mark and keep a portfolio of your assignments. But you can feel proud to achieve a BTEC because, whatever your plans in life – whether you decide to study further, go on to work or an Apprenticeship, or set up your own business – your BTEC National will be your passport to success in the next stage of your life.

Good luck, and we hope you enjoy your course.

Collaborative development

Learners completing their BTEC Nationals in Countryside Management will be aiming to go on to employment, often via the stepping stone of higher education. It was, therefore, essential that we developed these qualifications in close collaboration with experts from professional bodies, businesses and universities, and with the providers who will be delivering the qualifications. To ensure that the content meets providers' needs and provides high-quality preparation for progression, we engaged experts. We are very grateful to all the university and further education lecturers, teachers, employers, professional body representatives and other individuals who have generously shared their time and expertise to help us develop these new qualifications.

In addition, universities, professional bodies and businesses have provided letters of support confirming that these qualifications meet their entry requirements. These letters can be viewed on our website.

Summary of Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management specification Issue 4 changes

Summary of changes made between the previous issue and this current issue	Page number
The last paragraph of the <i>Qualification and unit content</i> section has been amended to allow centres delivering the qualification above to alter the content to reflect the context of the country where it is being delivered.	Page 7

If you need further information on these changes or what they mean, contact us via our website at: qualifications.pearson.com/en/support/contact-us.html.

Contents

Introduction to BTEC National qualifications for the countryside management sector	1
Total Qualification Time	2
Qualifications, sizes and purposes at a glance	3
Structures of the qualifications at a glance	5
Qualification and unit content	7
Assessment	7
Grading for units and qualifications	9
UCAS Tariff points	9
1 Qualification purpose	10
2 Structure	13
3 Units	17
Understanding your units	17
Index of units	21
4 Planning your programme	275
5 Assessment structure and external assessment	290
Introduction	290
Internal assessment	290
External assessment	290
6 Internal assessment	292
Principles of internal assessment	292
Setting effective assignments	294
Making valid assessment decisions	296
Planning and record keeping	298
7 Administrative arrangements	299
Introduction	299
Learner registration and entry	299
Access to assessment	299
Administrative arrangements for internal assessment	300
Administrative arrangements for external assessment	301
Dealing with malpractice in assessment	303
Certification and results	305
Additional documents to support centre administration	305
8 Quality assurance	306
9 Understanding the qualification grade	307
10 Resources and support	313
Support for setting up your course and preparing to teach	313
Support for teaching and learning	314
Support for assessment	314
Training and support from Pearson	315
Appendix 1 Links to industry standards	317
Appendix 2 Glossary of terms used for internally-assessed units	318

Introduction to BTEC National qualifications for the countryside management sector

This specification contains the information you need to deliver the Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management. The specification signposts you to additional handbooks and policies. It includes all the units for this qualification.

This qualification is part of the suite of countryside management qualifications offered by Pearson. In the suite there are qualifications that focus on different progression routes, allowing learners to choose the one best suited to their aspirations.

All qualifications in the suite share some common units and assessments, allowing learners some flexibility in moving between qualifications where they wish to select a more specific progression route. The qualification titles are given below.

Within this suite are BTEC National qualifications for post-16 learners who want to specialise in a specific industry, occupation or occupational group. The qualifications give learners specialist knowledge and technical skills, enabling entry to an Apprenticeship or other employment, or progression to related higher education courses. Learners taking these qualifications must have a significant level of employer involvement in their programmes.

In the countryside management sector these are the:

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Certificate in Countryside Management (603/0870/9)

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Foundation Diploma in Countryside Management (603/0869/2)

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Diploma in Countryside Management (603/1213/0)

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management (603/2677/3).

Other BTEC National qualifications in this sector provide a broad introduction that gives learners transferable knowledge and skills. These qualifications are for post-16 learners who want to continue their education through applied learning. The qualifications prepare learners for a range of higher education courses either by meeting entry requirements in their own right or by being accepted alongside other qualifications at the same level and adding value to them. Learners may progress to one of the qualifications in this specification having completed a smaller qualification that provides suitable fundamental knowledge and skills.

The Diploma (540 GLH) and Extended Diploma (1080 GLH) are approved as Tech Level qualifications for 2020 performance measures by the DFE. The Extended Certificate (360 GLH) and Foundation Diploma (540 GLH) are not currently recognised for performance measures. Please check our website for details of subsequent availability for future DFE performance measures.

This specification signposts all the other essential documents and support that you need as a centre in order to deliver, assess and administer the qualification, including the staff development required. A summary of all essential documents is given in *Section 7*. Information on how we can support you with this qualification is given in *Section 10*.

The information in this specification is correct at the time of publication.

Total Qualification Time

For all regulated qualifications, Pearson specifies a total number of hours that it is estimated learners will require to complete and show achievement for the qualification: this is the Total Qualification Time (TQT). Within TQT, Pearson identifies the number of Guided Learning Hours (GLH) that we estimate a centre delivering the qualification might provide. Guided learning means activities, such as lessons, tutorials, online instruction, supervised study and giving feedback on performance, that directly involve teachers and assessors in teaching, supervising and invigilating learners. Guided learning includes the time required for learners to complete external assessment under examination or supervised conditions.

In addition to guided learning, other required learning directed by teachers or assessors will include private study, preparation for assessment and undertaking assessment when not under supervision, such as preparatory reading, revision and independent research.

BTEC Nationals have been designed around the number of hours of guided learning expected. Each unit in the qualification has a GLH value of 60, 90 or 120. There is then a total GLH value for the qualification.

Each qualification has a TQT value. This may vary within sectors and across the suite, depending on the nature of the units in each qualification and the expected time for other required learning. The following table show all the qualifications in this sector and their GLH and TQT values.

Qualifications, sizes and purposes at a glance

Title	Size and structure	Summary purpose
Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Certificate in Countryside Management*	360 GLH (535 TQT) Equivalent in size to one A Level. Five units of which three are mandatory and one is external. Mandatory content (67%). External assessment (33%).	This qualification offers an engaging programme to support learners who want to pursue a career in the countryside management sector. It is intended as a Tech Level qualification. This size of qualification allows learners to study related and complementary qualifications alongside it, without duplication of content. The qualification can prepare learners for a range of apprenticeships in the countryside management sector, or direct entry to roles such as trainee reserve warden, or trainee estates operative. When taken alongside further Level 3 qualifications, it supports progression to a range of higher education courses in countryside management or environmental conservation.
Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Foundation Diploma in Countryside Management*	540 GLH (840 TQT) Equivalent in size to 1.5 A Levels. Seven units of which five are mandatory and two are external. Mandatory content (78%). External assessment (44%).	This qualification is designed as a one-year, full-time course, or as part of a two-year, full-time study programme for learners who want to take it alongside another area of complementary study. It is intended as a Tech Level qualification and supports progression to careers in the countryside management sector. This qualification is primarily for learners who are intending to gain employment directly, in roles such as fieldwork assistant or assistant warden, but can also be used to progress to an apprenticeship or a higher education course in countryside management or environmental conservation.
Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Diploma in Countryside Management	720 GLH (1155 TQT) Equivalent in size to two A Levels. Ten units of which seven are mandatory and two are external. Mandatory content (75%). External assessment (33%).	This qualification is designed to be the substantive part of a study programme for learners aged 16–19 who want a strong core of sector study. It is intended as a Tech Level qualification and supports progression to careers in the countryside management sector. The qualification is an introduction to the sector and is primarily for learners who are intending to gain employment directly in roles such as assistant gamekeeper, assistant reserve warden, assistant estate supervisor, or assistant ranger. The qualification focuses on countryside recreational activities, and the management of the countryside environment.

Title	Size and structure	Summary purpose
Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management	1080 GLH (1760 TQT) Equivalent in size to three A Levels. Fifteen units of which ten are mandatory and three are external. Mandatory content (72%). External assessment (33%).	This qualification is a two-year, full-time course for learners aged 16–19 and is intended as a Tech Level qualification. It is designed for learners who want to focus their studies on the countryside management sector, with a firm intention of progressing to employment in one of the countryside management or specialist roles available. The qualification also supports progression for those learners who intend to further their studies in higher education.

Learners must not register on the BTEC Level 3 Nationals in Agriculture, Horticulture or Forestry and Arboriculture, at the same time as the BTEC Level 3 Nationals in Countryside Management, owing to the overlap of content and assessment.

* These qualifications are not currently recognised by DFE for performance measures.

Structures of the qualifications at a glance

This table shows all the units and the qualifications to which they contribute. The full structure for this Pearson BTEC Level 3 National in Countryside Management is shown in *Section 2*. **You must refer to the full structure to select units and plan your programme.**

Key

Unit assessed externally	M	Mandatory units	O	Optional units
--------------------------	----------	-----------------	----------	----------------

Unit (number and title)	Unit size (GLH)	Extended Certificate* (360 GLH)	Foundation Diploma* (540 GLH)	Diploma (720 GLH)	Extended Diploma (1080 GLH)
1 Professional Working Responsibilities	120	M	M	M	M
2 Plant and Soil Science	120		M	M	M
3 Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors	120				M
4 Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors	60	M	M	M	M
5 Countryside Estate Skills Activities	60	M	M	M	M
6 Managing Environmental Habitats	60		M	M	M
7 Woodland Management	60	O	O	O	M
8 Identification, Planting and Care of Trees	60	O	O	O	O
9 Developing a Land-based Enterprise	60	O	O	O	O
10 Land-based Machinery Operations	60		O	O	O
11 Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management	60	O	O	M	M
12 Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators	60	O	O	O	O
13 Gamekeeping	60	O	O	O	O
14 Countryside Recreation	60			M	M
15 Managing a Shoot	60			O	O
16 Water Quality Management	60			O	O
17 Management of Deer in the UK	60			O	O
18 Tree Felling and Chainsaw Safety	60			O	O
19 Coastal Habitats Management	60			O	O
20 Working Dogs	60			O	O
21 Controlling Firearm Safety in the Land-based Sectors	60			O	O

continued...

Unit (number and title)	Unit size (GLH)	Extended Certificate (360 GLH)	Foundation Diploma (540 GLH)	Diploma (720 GLH)	Extended Diploma (1080 GLH)
22 Freshwater and Wetland Management	60				O
23 Applied Ecological Management	60				O
24 Ecological Concepts	60				O
25 Physical and Biological Environmental Processes	60				O
26 Managing Countryside Visitor Activities	60				M

* These qualifications are not currently recognised by DFE for performance measures.

Qualification and unit content

Pearson has developed the content of the new BTEC Nationals in collaboration with employers and representatives from higher education and relevant professional bodies. In this way, we have ensured that content is up to date and that it includes the knowledge, understanding, skills and attributes required in the sector.

Each qualification in the suite has its own purpose. The mandatory content provides a balance of breadth and depth ensuring that all learners have a strong basis for developing technical skills required in the sector. Learners are then offered the opportunity to develop a range of technical skills and attributes expected by employers with some opportunity to select between optional units where a degree of choice for individual learners to study content relevant to their own progression choices is appropriate. It is expected that learners will apply their learning in relevant employment and sector contexts during delivery and have opportunities to engage meaningfully with employers. The proportion of mandatory content ensures that all learners are following a coherent programme of study and acquiring the knowledge, understanding and skills that will be recognised and valued. Learners are expected to show achievement across mandatory units as detailed in *Section 2*.

BTEC Nationals have always required applied learning that brings together knowledge and understanding (the cognitive domain) with practical and technical skills (the psychomotor domain). This is achieved through learners performing vocational tasks that encourage the development of appropriate vocational behaviours (the affective domain) and transferable skills. Transferable skills are those such as communication, teamwork, planning and completing tasks to high standards, which are valued in both the workplace and in higher education.

Our approach provides rigour and balance, and promotes the ability to apply learning immediately in new contexts. Further details can be found in *Section 2*.

Centres should ensure that delivery of content is kept up to date. Some of the units within the specification may contain references to legislation, policies, regulations and organisations, which may not be applicable in the country you deliver this qualification in (if teaching outside of England), or which may have gone out-of-date during the lifespan of the specification. In these instances, it is possible to substitute such references with ones that are current and applicable in the country you deliver subject to confirmation by your Standards Verifier.

Assessment

Assessment is specifically designed to fit the purpose and objective of the qualification. It includes a range of assessment types and styles suited to vocational qualifications in the sector. There are three main forms of assessment that you need to be aware of: external, internal and synoptic.

Externally-assessed units

Each external assessment for a BTEC National is linked to a specific unit. All of the units developed for external assessment are of 120 GLH to allow learners to demonstrate breadth and depth of achievement. Each assessment is taken under specified conditions, then marked by Pearson and a grade awarded. Learners are permitted to resit external assessments during their programme. You should refer to our website for current policy information on permitted retakes.

The styles of external assessment used for qualifications in the countryside management suite are:

- examinations – all learners take the same assessment at the same time, normally with a written outcome
- set tasks – learners take the assessment during a defined window and demonstrate understanding through completion of a vocational task.

Some external assessments include a period of preparation using set information. External assessments are available twice a year. For detailed information on the external assessments please see the table in *Section 2*. For further information on preparing for external assessment see *Section 5*.

Internally-assessed units

Most units in the sector are internally assessed and subject to external standards verification. This means that you set and assess the assignments that provide the final summative assessment of each unit, using the examples and support that Pearson provides. Before you assess you will need to become an approved centre, if you are not one already. You will need to prepare to assess using the guidance in *Section 6*.

In line with the requirements and guidance for internal assessment, you select the most appropriate assessment styles according to the learning set out in the unit. This ensures that learners are assessed using a variety of styles to help them develop a broad range of transferable skills. Learners could be given opportunities to:

- demonstrate practical and technical skills using appropriate tools or processes
- complete realistic tasks to meet specific briefs or particular purposes
- write up the findings of their own research
- use case studies to explore complex or unfamiliar situations
- carry out projects for which they have choice over the direction and outcomes.

You will make grading decisions based on the requirements and supporting guidance given in the units. Learners may not make repeated submissions of assignment evidence. For further information see *Section 6*.

Synoptic assessment

Synoptic assessment requires learners to demonstrate that they can identify and use effectively, in an integrated way, an appropriate selection of skills, techniques, concepts, theories and knowledge from across the whole sector as relevant to a key task. BTEC learning has always encouraged learners to apply their learning in realistic contexts using scenarios and realistic activities that will permit learners to draw on and apply their learning. For these qualifications we have formally identified units that contain a synoptic assessment task. Synoptic assessment must take place after the teaching and learning of other mandatory units in order for learners to be able to draw from the full range of content. The synoptic assessment gives learners an opportunity to independently select and apply learning from across their programmes in the completion of a vocational task. Synoptic tasks may be in internally- or externally-assessed units. The particular units that contain the synoptic tasks for this qualification are shown in the structure in *Section 2*.

Language of assessment

Assessment of the internal and external units for these qualifications will be available in English. All learner work must be in English. A learner taking the qualifications may be assessed in British or Irish Sign Language where it is permitted for the purpose of reasonable adjustment. For information on reasonable adjustments see *Section 7*.

Grading for units and qualifications

Achievement in the qualification requires a demonstration of depth of study in each unit, assured acquisition of a range of practical skills required for employment or progression to higher education, and successful development of transferable skills. Learners achieving a qualification will have achieved across mandatory units, including external and synoptic assessment.

Units are assessed using a grading scale of Distinction (D), Merit (M), Pass (P), Near Pass (N) and Unclassified (U). The grade of Near Pass is used for externally-assessed units only. All mandatory and optional units contribute proportionately to the overall qualification grade, for example a unit of 120 GLH will contribute double that of a 60 GLH unit.

Qualifications in the suite are graded using a scale of P to D*, **or** PP to D*D*, **or** PPP to D*D*D*. Please see *Section 9* for more details. The relationship between qualification grading scales and unit grades will be subject to regular review as part of Pearson's standards monitoring processes on the basis of learner performance and in consultation with key users of the qualification.

UCAS Tariff points

The BTEC Nationals attract UCAS points. Please go to the UCAS website for full details of the points allocated.

1 Qualification purpose

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management

In this section, you will find information on the purpose of this qualification and how its design meets that purpose through the qualification objective and structure. We publish a full 'Statement of Purpose' for each qualification on our website. These statements are designed to guide you and potential learners to make the most appropriate choice about the size of qualification suitable at recruitment.

Who is this qualification for?

The Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management, which is 1080 GLH, is intended as a Tech Level qualification, equivalent in size to three A Levels, and is designed to meet the Tech Bacc measure, if learners study it alongside Level 3 mathematics and the Extended Project Qualification (EPQ). Outside the Tech Bacc, it will normally be a learner's only qualification in a two-year study programme. It is ideal for learners looking for a full-time course specialising in the countryside management sector, with a firm intention of progressing to employment in one of the wide variety of roles available.

As well as direct entry to employment, this qualification will prepare learners for higher study such as a specialist degree or BTEC Higher National Diploma. These routes give learners the opportunity to enter the sector at a higher level, or in a more specialist role.

No prior study of the sector is needed, but learners should normally have a range of achievement at Level 2, in GCSEs or equivalent qualifications, including English, mathematics and science.

What does this qualification cover?

There are ten mandatory units, which cover the following aspects of countryside management:

- professional working responsibilities
- plant and soil science
- contemporary issues in the land-based sectors
- work experience in the land-based sectors
- countryside estate skills activities
- managing environmental habitats
- wildlife ecology and conservation management
- woodland management
- countryside recreation
- managing countryside visitor activities.

Learners will be able to add five optional units to the mandatory content. These have been designed to support their progression to a range of employment opportunities in countryside management, and to a range of higher education courses. Optional units will introduce learners to a sector-specialist area of their choice, including working in particular environments, and they will link with relevant occupational areas. The optional units cover the following areas:

- planting and care of trees
- developing a land-based enterprise
- land-based machinery operations
- controlling countryside pests and predators
- gamekeeping
- managing a shoot
- controlling firearm safety in the land-based sectors
- water quality management
- management of deer in the UK
- tree felling and chainsaw safety
- freshwater and wetland management

- coastal management
- working dogs
- freshwater and wetland management
- applied ecological management
- ecological concepts
- physical and biological environmental processes.

While taking this qualification, learners will be required to engage with sector employers as part of their course, including 300 hours of work experience with an employer in the sector, where they will be given opportunities to develop practical skills in preparation for employment.

What could this qualification lead to?

This qualification will prepare learners for direct employment in the countryside management sector, and is suitable if they want to enter a particular specialist area of work such as:

- ranger
- warden
- estate supervisor
- gamekeeper
- shoot manager
- assistant scientific officer
- assistant researcher
- countryside education officer.

There are many roles in this sector where recruitment is at graduate level. This qualification is recognised by higher education providers as meeting admission requirements to many relevant courses in the countryside management sector, for example:

- BSc (Hons) in Countryside and Environmental Management
- BSc (Hons) in Countryside Management
- BSc (Hons) in Landscape Management
- FdSc in British Wildlife Conservation.

Learners should always check the entry requirements for degree programmes with specific higher-education providers.

How does the qualification provide employability and technical skills?

In the BTEC National units, there are opportunities during the teaching and learning phase to give learners practice in developing employability skills. Where employability skills are referred to in this specification, we are generally referring to skills in the following three main categories:

- **cognitive and problem-solving skills:** using critical thinking, approaching non-routine problems applying expert and creative solutions, using systems and technology
- **interpersonal skills:** communicating, working collaboratively, negotiating and influencing, self-presentation
- **intrapersonal skills:** self-management, adaptability and resilience, self-monitoring and development.

There are also specific requirements in some units for assessment of these skills where relevant, for example, where learners are required to undertake real or simulated activities.

Many of the mandatory and specified optional units encourage learners to develop the specific practical skills that employers are looking for.

How does the qualification provide transferable knowledge and skills for higher education?

All BTEC Nationals provide transferable knowledge and skills that prepare learners for progression to university or other higher study either immediately or for career progression. The transferable skills that universities value include:

- the ability to learn independently
- the ability to research actively and methodically
- the ability to give presentations and be active group members.

BTEC learners can also benefit from opportunities for deep learning where they are able to make connections among units and select areas of interest for detailed study. BTEC Nationals provide a vocational context in which learners can become prepared for lifelong learning through:

- effective writing
- analytical skills
- creative development
- preparation for assessment methods used in degrees.

2 Structure

Qualification structure

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management

Mandatory units

There are ten mandatory units, seven internal and three external. Learners must complete and achieve at Near Pass grade or above all mandatory external units. Learners must complete and achieve a Pass or above in all mandatory internal units in Group A.

Learners must complete the mandatory internal units in Group B.

Optional units

Learners must complete at least five optional units.

Learners must complete and achieve at pass grade or above in at least six units across groups B and C.

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management				
Unit number	Unit title	GLH	Type	How assessed
Mandatory units group A – learners complete and achieve all units				
1	Professional Working Responsibilities	120	Mandatory	External
2	Plant and Soil Science	120	Mandatory	External
3	Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors	120	Mandatory	External
5	Countryside Estate Skills Activities	60	Mandatory	Internal
14	Countryside Recreation	60	Mandatory and Synoptic	Internal
26	Managing Countryside Visitor Activities	60	Mandatory and Synoptic	Internal
Mandatory units group B – learners complete all units				
4	Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors	60	Mandatory	Internal
6	Managing Environmental Habitats	60	Mandatory	Internal
7	Woodland Management	60	Mandatory	Internal
11	Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management	60	Mandatory	Internal
Optional units group C – learners complete five units				
8	Identification, Planting and Care of Trees	60	Optional	Internal
9	Developing a Land-based Enterprise	60	Optional	Internal
10	Land-based Machinery Operations	60	Optional	Internal
12	Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators	60	Optional	Internal
13	Gamekeeping	60	Optional	Internal
15	Managing a Shoot	60	Optional	Internal
16	Water Quality Management	60	Optional	Internal
17	Management of Deer in the UK	60	Optional	Internal

Pearson BTEC Level 3 National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management				
Unit number	Unit title	GLH	Type	How assessed
Optional units group C – learners complete five units <i>continued</i>				
18	Tree Felling and Chainsaw Safety	60	Optional	Internal
19	Coastal Habitats Management	60	Optional	Internal
20	Working Dogs	60	Optional	Internal
21	Controlling Firearm Safety in the Land-based Sectors	60	Optional	Internal
22	Freshwater and Wetland Management	60	Optional	Internal
23	Applied Ecological Management	60	Optional	Internal
24	Ecological Concepts	60	Optional	Internal
25	Physical and Biological Environmental Processes	60	Optional	Internal

External assessment

This is a summary of the type and availability of external assessment, which is of units making up 33 per cent of the total qualification GLH. See *Section 5* and the units and sample assessment materials for more information.

Unit	Type	Availability
Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A task set and marked by Pearson and completed under supervised conditions. • The supervised assessment is 3 hours in a specified session timetabled by Pearson. • Written submission of evidence. • 60 marks. 	Jan and May/June First assessment January 2020
Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A written examination set and marked by Pearson. • 1 hour 30 minutes. • Written submission. • 80 marks. 	Jan and May/June First assessment January 2020
Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A task set and marked by Pearson and completed under supervised conditions. • Learners will be given preparatory information before the supervised assessment. • The supervised assessment is 2 hours and 30 minutes in a specified session timetabled by Pearson. • Written submission of evidence. • 64 marks. 	Jan and May/June First assessment January 2021

Synoptic assessment

The mandatory synoptic assessment requires learners to select and apply learning from across the qualification to the completion of defined key vocational tasks.

Across the assessment for *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation* and *Unit 26: Managing Countryside Visitor Activities*, learners complete planning, promotion and management tasks related to countryside recreation activities. Learners plan the management of countryside recreation activities, exploring their impact on the countryside and the environment, carry out promotional activities for the events, and plan and carry out the practical preparations and event management activities required for countryside events attended by multiple visitors.

To complete this activity successfully, learners will need to draw on their knowledge, understanding and skills relating to: safe working practices and waste management developed in *Unit 1: Professional Working Practices*; knowledge of plant biology and soil management developed in *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science*; knowledge of contemporary issues facing countryside organisations and the visitors using these facilities from *Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors*; environmental construction and maintenance developed in *Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities*; habitat and countryside environment management developed in *Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats*; wildlife habitat surveys and conservation management developed in *Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management*.

Additionally, learners will have completed *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*, and gained experience of and insight into real working practices in the sector. Learners complete the tasks using knowledge and understanding from their studies of the sector and apply both transferable and specialist knowledge and skills.

In assessing these units assignments will require learners to select from and apply their learning from across their programme. The units provide further information.

Employer involvement in assessment and delivery

You need to ensure that learners on this qualification have a significant level of employer involvement in programme delivery or assessment. See *Section 4* for more information.

3 Units

Understanding your units

The units in this specification set out our expectations of assessment in a way that helps you to prepare your learners for assessment. The units help you to undertake assessment and quality assurance effectively.

Each unit in the specification is set out in a similar way. There are two types of unit format:

- internal units
- external units.

This section explains how the units work. It is important that all teachers, assessors, internal verifiers and other staff responsible for the programme review this section.

Internal units

Section	Explanation
Unit number	The number is in a sequence in the sector. Numbers may not be sequential for an individual qualification.
Unit title	This is the formal title that we always use and it appears on certificates.
Level	All units are at Level 3 on the national framework.
Unit type	This shows if the unit is internal or external only. See structure information in <i>Section 2</i> for full details.
GLH	Units may have a GLH value of 120, 90 or 60. This indicates the numbers of hours of teaching, directed activity and assessment expected. It also shows the weighting of the unit in the final qualification grade.
Unit in brief	A brief formal statement on the content of the unit that is helpful in understanding its role in the qualification. You can use this in summary documents, brochures etc.
Unit introduction	This is designed with learners in mind. It indicates why the unit is important, how learning is structured, and how learning might be applied when progressing to employment or higher education.
Learning aims	These help to define the scope, style and depth of learning of the unit. You can see where learners should be learning standard requirements ('understand') or where they should be actively researching ('investigate'). You can find out more about the verbs we use in learning aims in <i>Appendix 2</i> .
Summary of unit	This new section helps teachers to see at a glance the main content areas against the learning aims and the structure of the assessment. The content areas and structure of assessment are required. The forms of evidence given are suitable to fulfil the requirements.
Content	This section sets out the required teaching content of the unit. Content is compulsory except when shown as 'e.g.'. Learners should be asked to complete summative assessment only after the teaching content for the unit or learning aim(s) has been covered.

Section	Explanation
Assessment criteria	<p>Each learning aim has Pass and Merit criteria. Each assignment has at least one Distinction criterion.</p> <p>A full glossary of terms used is given in <i>Appendix 2</i>. All assessors need to understand our expectations of the terms used.</p> <p>Distinction criteria represent outstanding performance in the unit. Some criteria require learners to draw together learning from across the learning aims.</p>
Essential information for assignments	<p>This shows the maximum number of assignments that may be used for the unit to allow for effective summative assessment, and how the assessment criteria should be used to assess performance.</p>
Further information for teachers and assessors	<p>The section gives you information to support the implementation of assessment. It is important that this is used carefully alongside the assessment criteria.</p>
Resource requirements	<p>Any specific resources that you need to be able to teach and assess are listed in this section. For information on support resources see <i>Section 10</i>.</p>
Essential information for assessment decisions	<p>This information gives guidance for each learning aim or assignment of the expectations for Pass, Merit and Distinction standard. This section contains examples and essential clarification.</p>
Links to other units	<p>This section shows you the main relationship among units. This section can help you to structure your programme and make best use of materials and resources.</p>
Employer involvement	<p>This section gives you information on the units that can be used to give learners involvement with employers. It will help you to identify the kind of involvement that is likely to be successful.</p>

External units

Section	Explanation
Unit number	The number is in a sequence in the sector. Numbers may not be sequential for an individual qualification.
Unit title	This is the formal title that we always use and it appears on certificates.
Level	All units are at Level 3 on the national framework.
Unit type	This shows if the unit is internal or external only. See structure information in <i>Section 2</i> for full details.
GLH	Units may have a GLH value of 120, 90 or 60 GLH. This indicates the numbers of hours of teaching, directed activity and assessment expected. It also shows the weighting of the unit in the final qualification grade.
Unit in brief	A brief formal statement on the content of the unit.
Unit introduction	This is designed with learners in mind. It indicates why the unit is important, how learning is structured, and how learning might be applied when progressing to employment or higher education.
Summary of assessment	This sets out the type of external assessment used and the way in which it is used to assess achievement.
Assessment outcomes	These show the hierarchy of knowledge, understanding, skills and behaviours that are assessed. Includes information on how this hierarchy relates to command terms in sample assessment materials (SAMs).
Essential content	For external units all the content is obligatory, the depth of content is indicated in the assessment outcomes and sample assessment materials (SAMs). The content will be sampled through the external assessment over time, using the variety of questions or tasks shown.
Grade descriptors	We use grading descriptors when making judgements on grade boundaries. You can use them to understand what we expect to see from learners at particular grades.
Key terms typically used in assessment	These definitions will help you analyse requirements and prepare learners for assessment.
Resources	Any specific resources that you need to be able to teach and assess are listed in this section. For information on support resources see <i>Section 10</i> .
Links to other units	This section shows the main relationship among units. This section can help you to structure your programme and make best use of materials and resources.
Employer involvement	This section gives you information on the units that can be used to give learners involvement with employers. It will help you to identify the kind of involvement that is likely to be successful.

Index of units

This section contains all the units developed for this qualification. Please refer to *pages 5–6* to check which units are available in all qualifications in the countryside management sector.

Unit 1:	Professional Working Responsibilities	23
Unit 2:	Plant and Soil Science	33
Unit 3:	Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors	43
Unit 4:	Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors	51
Unit 5:	Countryside Estate Skills Activities	61
Unit 6:	Managing Environmental Habitats	61
Unit 7:	Woodland Management	81
Unit 8:	Identification, Planting and Care of Trees	91
Unit 9:	Developing a Land-based Enterprise	101
Unit 10:	Land-based Machinery Operations	109
Unit 11:	Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management	119
Unit 12:	Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators	129
Unit 13:	Gamekeeping	141
Unit 14:	Countryside Recreation	151
Unit 15:	Managing a Shoot	161
Unit 16:	Water Quality Management	171
Unit 17:	Management of Deer in the UK	181
Unit 18:	Tree Felling and Chainsaw Safety	191
Unit 19:	Coastal Habitats Management	201
Unit 20:	Working Dogs	211
Unit 21:	Controlling Firearm Safety in the Land-based Sectors	221
Unit 22:	Freshwater and Wetland Management	231
Unit 23:	Applied Ecological Management	243
Unit 24:	Ecological Concepts	253
Unit 25:	Physical and Biological Environmental Processes	263
Unit 26:	Managing Countryside Visitor Activities	275

Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities

Level: **3**

Unit type: **External**

Guided learning hours: **120**

Unit in brief

Learners study professional responsible working practices with a focus on ensuring health and safety, wellbeing, resource management and waste management in the land-based sectors.

Unit introduction

The land-based sectors are made up of diverse industries, with the majority of people being self-employed. The sectors directly manage almost 90% of the UK's land mass. Promoting and maintaining welfare, health and safety, and effective waste management in the working environment is essential for all the sectors. It is also a key requirement for the development of all employees.

In this unit, you will investigate the impact that professional working responsibilities have on personal welfare. You will learn about health and safety legislation, safe working practices, risk assessments, and the professional skills required to work safely and effectively in the land-based sectors. You will develop skills in and knowledge of good practice and professional responsibility towards self and others in the workplace, including the duty of care for the environment, relating this to resource efficiency and responsible management. You will develop your skills to interpret appropriate policies, plans, audits, maps and schematic diagrams in relation to safe working practices, reducing the impact of waste, and analysing documentation to review operational plans. You will develop a sound understanding of personal and professional responsibilities required to enter employment, with a strong awareness of how to be safe and keep others safe. To complete the assessment task within this unit, you will need to draw on your learning from across your programme.

This unit will prepare you for progression to employment in a trainee or supervisory role in the land-based sectors or to set up your own land-based business. You will also gain skills that prepare you for further or higher education courses, including agricultural science, plant science, environmental studies and land management.

Summary of assessment

This unit is assessed by a task set by Pearson.

In the assessed task, learners are given information and will complete a number of activities demonstrating their knowledge and understanding of professional working responsibilities.

The task will be carried out under supervised conditions in a single three-hour session timetabled by Pearson.

The number of marks for the unit is 60.

The assessment availability is January and May/June each year. The first assessment availability is January 2020.

Sample assessment materials will be available to help centres prepare learners for assessment.

Assessment outcomes

AO1 Demonstrate knowledge and understanding of personal and professional working responsibilities and practices, risk management and waste management in the land-based sectors.

AO2 Analyse the application of personal and professional working responsibilities and practices, to risk management, and waste management in the land-based sectors.

AO3 Evaluate approaches to working personal and professional responsibilities and practices, risk management, and waste management in the land-based sectors.

AO4 Make connections between principles and practices of health and safety management in the land-based sectors.

Essential content

The essential content is set out under content areas. Learners must cover all specified content before the assessment.

A Professional responsibilities associated with the workplace

A1 Characteristics of professional working responsibilities and sources of relevant information

- Understanding the scope of professional working responsibilities in the land-based sectors, including:
 - compliance with current legislation and industry codes of practice
 - minimising risk to self, others and the environment
 - following industry best practice
 - working to industry standards
 - developing skills through continuing professional development (CPD).
- Stakeholders associated with developing, promoting and upholding professional responsibilities, including the role of:
 - employers
 - employees
 - government departments and agencies
 - trades unions
 - professional bodies and trade associations.
- Sources of information on professional working responsibilities, including:
 - staff handbooks, staff lists and staff induction documents
 - internet-based resources, including government legislation
 - professional publications
 - codes of conduct
 - contracts of employment.

A2 Characteristics and scope of personal responsibilities in the workplace

- Promoting a working environment and culture that is healthy, safe and effective, including awareness of the role of:
 - industry schemes
 - employer awareness campaigns
 - external training programmes and training providers
 - workplace policies, including whistleblower policies.
- Promoting effective working relationships.
- Awareness of factors that may have a negative impact on own and others' personal welfare and workplace performance, including:
 - personal stress
 - illness
 - work-related stress and workload
 - lone working.
- Accessing sources of assistance and support for wellbeing in the workplace, and their importance, including:
 - NHS services
 - charities
 - professional and trade organisations
 - professional counselling and mental health organisations
 - industry schemes.

- Awareness of the importance of CPD, including:
 - formal and informal opportunities for skills development
 - job shadowing
 - upskilling
 - awareness of industry-specific certificates of competence.

B Health and safety responsibilities

B1 Introduction to health and safety and associated legislation

Awareness of current health and safety legislation that applies in a working environment and how legislation impacts on working activities.

- Statutes and regulations current at the time of assessment:
 - Management of Health and Safety at Work Regulations 1999
 - Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974
 - Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations (RIDDOR) 2013
 - Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002
 - Manual Handling Operations Regulations 1992
 - Work at Height Regulations 2005
 - Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER) 1998
 - Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations (LOLER) 1998
 - The Electricity at Work Regulations 1989.
- Health and safety audit, including:
 - analysis of previous incidents and near misses
 - identifying good practice, poor practice and gaps in health and safety policies and procedures
 - suggesting improvements
 - setting objectives
 - considering cost-benefit implications of issues identified and improvements suggested.

B2 Safe working practices

Awareness of key concepts of safe working practices, with reference to health and safety and the environment.

- The importance of training staff and implementing policies and practices in order to maintain appropriate standards in health and safety practices.
- Access to adequate welfare facilities, including drinking water, toilets, wash facilities.
- Provision of an appropriate and safe working environment, including ventilation, temperature, lighting and adequate maintenance of the working area.
- Provision of first-aid training and equipment, including first aid at work training.
- Using personal protective equipment (PPE) correctly, including when:
 - operating, maintaining and repairing machinery
 - handling organic or hazardous substances
 - requiring protection from ultraviolet (UV) light
 - requiring protection from weather conditions.
- Minimising risk of disease, including:
 - wearing correct clothing
 - using the correct equipment and in the correct manner
 - practising appropriate standards of biosecurity, including hygiene and self-awareness
 - awareness of causes and symptoms of common diseases affecting those working in land-based sectors, including legionnaires' disease, leptospirosis, tetanus, salmonella, Lyme disease, E. coli, cryptosporidium.
- Safe use of machinery, including standard operating procedures (SOPs) for common land-based machinery and the consequences if SOPs are not followed.

- Fire safety, including:
 - fire alarms, extinguishers and blankets
 - ensuring combustible materials are stored in a safe and appropriate way
 - taking reasonable steps to minimise risk of fire and arson in buildings and in the environment.
- Producing and displaying an evacuation plan for all areas, including evacuation in the event of fire.
- Electrical safety, including:
 - requirement for all electrical work to be carried out by a competent person
 - ensuring all electrical equipment is in an appropriate state for use
 - portable appliance testing (PAT) and residual current devices (RCDs)
 - overhead lines and underground cables
 - using rechargeable equipment and tools where appropriate.
- Displaying safety information, including symbols on machinery and product labels.
- Signage, including:
 - fire safety signage
 - signs prohibiting certain behaviour
 - warning signs
 - signs prescribing specific behaviour
 - signs indicating emergency escape or first aid.
- Reporting of accidents and near misses.
- Importance of working in ways that avoid or minimise negative environmental impacts, including:
 - knowledge and application of legislation relevant to environmental impacts
 - being aware of the potential environmental impact, both negative and positive, of activities carried out in the workplace
 - steps that can be taken in order to minimise the negative environmental impacts of work carried out.

B3 Risk assessment

The requirement to carry out risk assessments, dynamic risk assessments and the relationship to current relevant legislation.

- Using and interpreting risk assessments:
 - written or static risk assessments prepared before the activities
 - dynamic risk assessment carried out while undertaking activities
 - qualitative or subjective analysis of risk
 - numerical or objective analysis of risk, including severity and likelihood, hierarchy of controls.
- Risk mitigation strategies and their implementation to manage identified risks, including:
 - cost–benefit analysis of specific mitigation strategies.
- Producing dynamic risk assessments:
 - presence of the general public, employees and contractors
 - interpretation of given information, including product labels, signage and COSHH data sheets
 - lone working practices.

B4 Schematics and maps

The importance of maps and schematic diagrams in establishing the locations of services and drainage, for purposes relating to health and safety, land management and the environment.

- Interpreting and using maps and schematics at a variety of scales.
- Using maps and schematics to analyse and record information, including:
 - the role of Global Positioning System (GPS), aerial photographs and online mapping services.
- Determining and checking the location of services, both overground and underground.

- Equipment and techniques required to locate services accurately, including the:
 - use of cable avoidance tool (CAT) and Genny
 - importance of safe digging techniques
 - importance of isolating services, including gas, water and electric.

B5 Purpose of risk assessment

- Uses and implementation of risk assessments.
- Scenarios for risk assessment use:
 - application of health and safety, environmental and waste management policies and procedures
 - response to a specific incident, including incidents reported in the press
 - the permanent or temporary change of use of land or buildings
 - the purchase or installation of new equipment
 - the development of a new enterprise or new methods of working
 - implementing new initiatives, including changes to legislation.

C Managing waste responsibly and safely

Classify waste, understand the relevant legal responsibilities and develop waste management strategies that consider the cost–benefit implications of waste management.

C1 Animal, plant and non-organic waste

- Definition and sources of organic and inorganic wastes in the land-based sectors, including:
 - aggregates, plastics and metals
 - biodegradable waste
 - controlled waste
 - hazardous waste
 - dirty or foul water
 - grey water.
- Awareness that designated areas in the working environment have specific types of items and processes for waste disposal and management.

C2 Legal responsibilities for waste management

- Current waste management legislation and documentation specific to land-based sectors, including:
 - duty of care
 - waste exemptions
 - waste disposal documentation
 - hazardous and controlled waste
 - custody of waste.
- The waste hierarchy system, including:
 - prevention, including procurement to reduce waste
 - prepare to reuse
 - recycle
 - other recovery, including incineration, anaerobic digestion and gasification, and pyrolysis with energy recovery
 - disposal, including landfill and incineration without energy recovery.
- The potential impact of waste and waste disposal on sustainability, climate change and the environment, including:
 - advantages and disadvantages
 - social factors
 - economic factors
 - environmental factors.
- Innovations in waste management.

C3 Environmental and waste management policies, plans and audits

Documents and processes related to health, safety, the environment and waste management.

- Use of audits to establish the current situation in a business or enterprise.
- Audit procedures, including frequency, checklists, logs, metering and measurements.
- The role of audits to inform or update plans and policies.
- Financial implications and cost–benefit analysis of waste storage and disposal, including:
 - economic advantages and disadvantages of specific waste management strategies
 - environmental advantages and disadvantages of specific waste management strategies.

Grade descriptors

To achieve a grade learners are expected to demonstrate these attributes across the essential content of the unit. The principle of best fit will apply in awarding grades.

Level 3 Pass

Learners will demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic professional working and safe working in a land-based setting. Learners will demonstrate that they can apply safe working practices to a given context. They will identify areas of good practice, areas where standards could be raised and outline basic methods of doing this. Learners will be able to make some connections between the risks that are associated with a specific activity in a given context, with a range of variables. Learners will apply some valid concepts to the correct and safe management of different types of waste, they will understand the need to apply legal and environmental considerations to this and the management of resources, and its link to sustainability.

Level 3 Distinction

Learners will demonstrate detailed knowledge and understanding of professional working and safe working in a land-based setting. Learners will demonstrate that they can apply justified safe working practices to a given context. They will identify areas of good practice, areas where standards could be raised and outline accurate recommendations for doing this, using a detailed and appropriate action plan. Learners will be able to make appropriate and justified connections between the risks that are associated with a specific activity in a given context, with a range of variables. Learners will apply accurate and detailed concepts to the correct and safe management of different types of waste, they will understand the need to apply legal and environmental considerations to this and the management of resources, and its link to sustainability.

Key words typically used in assessment

The following table shows the key words that will be used consistently by Pearson in our assessments to ensure learners are rewarded for demonstrating the necessary skills.

Please note: the list below will not necessarily be used in every paper/session and is provided for guidance only.

Command or term	Definition
Analyse	Learners present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> to discover the meaning or essential features of a theme, topic or situation by breaking something down into its components or examining factors methodically and in detail by identifying separate factors, stating how they are related and explaining how each one contributes to the topic.
Complete	Learners enter relevant information or data as required to a structured item such as a table or diagram.
Dynamic risk assessment	The process of identifying risks and hazards continuously and in response to changes in situations and activities.

Command or term	Definition
Evaluate	Learners review information before bringing it together to form a conclusion or come to a supported judgement of a subject's qualities in relation to its context, drawing on evidence: strengths, weaknesses, alternative actions, significance, relevant data or information.
Health and safety audit	The auditing of information on the effectiveness of health and safety policies and procedures.
Interpretation	Learners are able to draw the meaning, purpose or qualities of something from a stimulus.
Justify/Justification	Learners give reasons or evidence to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • support an opinion and/or decision • prove something right or reasonable.
Recommend	Learners put forward someone or something with approval as being suitable for a particular purpose or role.
Strategies	Method or plan to bring out a desired outcome, such as the achievement of a goal or solution to a problem.
Waste management plan	A plan for the disposal of a range of waste materials, showing consideration of legal requirements, environmental responsibilities and sustainability.

Links to other units

This unit links to *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science

Level: **3**

Unit type: **External**

Guided learning hours: **120**

Unit in brief

Learners study the structural and functional features of plants and soils that inform management practices.

Unit introduction

Plants are one of the most amazing and varied living organisms on our planet. They supply us with our oxygen, provide us with food and shape our landscape. Understanding how plants grow and what they need to be successful is essential for their management in a range of sectors and for a broad range of purposes, including growing crops for people or livestock, growing decorative plants and providing environments for leisure or habitat conservation.

In this unit, you will develop an understanding of external and internal plant structures, including plant cells. You will learn about the relationship between these structures and their function, such as how they obtain their nutrition and how they reproduce. You will gain an understanding of important life processes of plants and how these are affected by their environment. You will learn about the physical and chemical characteristics of soil. You will also learn different types of soil, their characteristics and the essential nutrition in soils that plants need to ensure their success.

The knowledge and skills gained in this unit are fundamental to any role where you grow, plant, manage or establish plants. Whether you are working in forestry, arable farming, sports turf, landscaping or gardening, this unit will give you a foundation for further study at higher education or roles in your chosen sector.

Summary of assessment

This unit is assessed by an examination set and marked by Pearson.

The examination will last for 1 hour and 30 minutes. The number of marks for the paper is 80.

The paper will consist of a variety of question types, including extended open response.

The assessment availability is January and May/June each year. The first assessment availability is January 2020.

Sample assessment materials will be available to help centres prepare learners for assessment.

Assessment outcomes

AO1 Demonstrate knowledge of structures and functions in plant and soil science

Command words: complete, describe, give, identify, match, name, state

Marks: ranges from 1 to 4 marks

AO2 Demonstrate understanding of plant and soil science, including soil and plant management practices

Command words: define, describe, explain, give, label, link, match, outline

Marks: ranges from 1 to 4 marks

AO3 Apply knowledge and understanding of plant and soil science in the context of managing plant growth

Command words: analyse, assess, compare, discuss, evaluate, examine, explain

Marks: ranges from 6 to 8 marks

AO4 Make connections between managing soil and plant growth in different contexts

Command words: analyse, assess, compare, discuss, evaluate

Marks: ranges from 6 to 8 marks

Essential content

The essential content is set out under content areas. Learners must cover all specified content before the assessment.

A Plant structure and systems

Structures and functions of plants, including cells, life processes and their role in the growing of healthy plants.

A1 Plant cell structure and specialisations

Structure and function of plant cells and their components linked to their role and location.

- Cell structure and organelles: cell wall, plasma membrane, nucleus, vacuole, cytoplasm, ribosome, mitochondria, chloroplasts, rough endoplasmic reticulum, smooth endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi apparatus, microtubules.
- Cell division by mitosis and meiosis, including prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase, cytokinesis, genetic differences.
- Cell specialisations, including distribution of chloroplasts:
 - root, including leucoplasts, endodermis, epidermis, stele, apical meristem, parenchyma, root hair, root cap
 - stem, including parenchyma, lenticels, meristems
 - leaf, including guard cells, epidermis, palisade mesophyll, spongy mesophyll, vascular bundle
 - flowering parts, including chromoplasts, pollen, gametes, zygote.

A2 Plant structure and function

Functions of plant structures in relation to plant growth and development, including changes to seasonal conditions.

- Root and stem structure:
 - root structure, including fibrous, adventitious and taproot system; functions, including anchorage, osmosis and absorption of minerals, transport system to plant, food storage
 - storage organs, including bulbs, corms, rhizomes, tubers
 - shoot structure, stem characteristics, node, internode, lateral bud, terminal bud; leaf arrangements, including alternate, opposite and whorled, lenticel; function, including support, bear leaves, transport system of water and nutrients around the plant, growth
 - vascular bundles, including xylem, phloem, cambium.
- Leaf structure:
 - leaf characteristics, petiole, lamina, margin, midrib, apex, base; venation, including reticulated and parallel
 - differences between evergreen and deciduous leaves
 - leaf types, including simple and compound, petiolated and sessile, leaf shapes.
- Characteristics of evergreen plants, to include *Ilex*, *Taxus* and *Picea*.
- Characteristics of deciduous plants, to include *Betula*, *Fagus* and *Fraxinus*.
- Characteristics of grasses: *Triticum* and *Hordeum*.

A3 Plant processes

Processes and requirements for healthy plant growth, including the features, structure and function of relevant plant tissues.

- Photosynthesis, including:
 - role of chloroplast structure and chlorophylls
 - light dependent and independent stages, carbon fixation
 - factors influencing the rate of photosynthesis, to include temperature, carbon dioxide levels, leaf colour, leaf area, light availability, water supply, nutrients.
- Respiration:
 - aerobic and anaerobic respiration
 - factors influencing respiration rates, including temperature, oxygen, light, carbon dioxide, water availability, plant growth.
- Compensation point in relation to respiration and photosynthesis, including plasmodesmata.
- The role of osmosis in turgidity, flaccidity and plasmolysis.
- Diffusion of carbon dioxide, oxygen and water vapour into and out of plants.
- Translocation in the phloem.
- Transpiration in the xylem:
 - factors affecting transpiration, including the sun, air temperature, humidity, air movement, water supply
 - guard cells and stomata, including regulation of opening and closing to facilitate gas exchange and control transpiration in plants.

A4 Plant nutrition

Nutritional requirements for growth and development of healthy plants.

- Role of the elements required for plant growth:
 - elements from soil water and the atmosphere, carbon (C), hydrogen (H), oxygen (O)
 - macronutrients: nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P), potassium (K), calcium (Ca), magnesium (Mg), sulfur (S)
 - micronutrients: boron (B), chlorine (Cl), copper (Cu), iron (Fe), manganese (Mn), molybdenum (Mo), zinc (Zn), nickel (Ni).

Effects of lack of nutrition on growth and development of plants.

- Effects of the lack of macro and micro nutrients and how these are shown in the plant:
 - signs of deficiencies, chlorosis of the leaves, stunted growth, distorted foliage, aborted flowers or pods, absence of flowering, fruiting, weak stems, leaf striping, leaf spotting, necrosis or plant death
 - causes of nutritional deficiencies, acidic or alkaline soil, deviation from optimum pH, soil type, leaching, drought, waterlogging.

A5 Reproduction systems

- Structure and function of reproductive parts of flowering plants:
 - differences between dioecious, monoecious and hermaphrodite flowering plants
 - angiosperms and characteristics of monocotyledon and dicotyledonous flowers
 - parts of the flower, receptacle, calyx, corolla, perianth, pedicel, peduncle, bract
 - androecium, including filament, anther
 - gynoecium: carpels, ovary, style, stigma.
- Pollination processes:
 - self-pollination and cross-pollination
 - entomophilous pollination and anemophilous pollination and pollen transfer.
- Fertilisation processes – development and characteristics of pericarp in:
 - simple and compound succulent fruit
 - dry fruit, including dehiscent, indehiscent and schizocarpic seeds.

- Germination:
 - parts of the seed, testa, embryo, including cotyledon(s), epicotyl, plumule, hypocotyl, radicle
 - seed dispersal systems, dormancy, viability, vigour
 - hypogeal germination
 - epigeal germination
 - factors that affect successful germination, including age of seed, light, air, moisture, temperature and viability.
- Asexual reproduction, including rhizome and stolon.

B Soil

The characteristics of soil and the importance of soil fertility in relation to plant health and successful growth.

B1 Soil types and texture

- Soil types, to include sand, silt, clay, chalk, peat and loam.
- Soil texture:
 - soil particles for sand, silt, clay and loam, including water holding capacity, permeability, workability, organic matter, particle size, fertility, pH
 - soil grading and particle sizes, including use of hand texturing.

B2 Soil structure

- Soil profiles and horizons in relation to rooting depths, including aggregates, topsoil, subsoil, parent rock.
- Structural characteristics: single grain, granular, blocky, platy, columnar and prismatic structures, including particles, water and air space, and air-filled porosity.
- Effects of topography and weathering on soil:
 - aspect, shape of the land, slopes, dips, free-draining soils, poor drainage, water table
 - climatic factors, including wind, rain, frost, erosion
 - physical, chemical and biological effects on soil formation.

B3 Biological and chemical activities affecting soil health and fertility

Impact on soil health and fertility, and plant growth, of biological and biochemical activities.

- Biological activity in the soil profile: bacteria, fungus, actinomycetes, saprophytic fungi and mycorrhizae.
- Role of rhizobium bacteria in fixing atmospheric nitrogen.
- Indicators of good soil fertility and impact on soil health:
 - interaction of animals and vegetation with soil and links to biological weathering
 - role of organisms in improving soil condition and health
 - living organisms in the soil profile: slugs, snails, earthworms, woodlice, springtails, beetles and eelworms.
- Sources and cycles of carbon and nitrogen.
- The role of organic matter, including humus, peat, farmyard manure, including pig, horse, cow and chicken, slurry, leaf mulch, bark, composts, seaweed, green manure, sewage sludge, straw, industrial waste.

B4 Soil acidity and alkalinity

- Effects on plant and root growth:
 - plant health, nutrient availability, microbial activity, plant yield
 - characteristics of calcifuge, calcicole plants.
- Interpretation of pH scale test results.
- Causes of changes in soil acidity and alkalinity:
 - applications of lime, aluminium sulfate, ferrous sulfate, organic matter
 - poor drainage, watering, buffering capacity.

B5 Soil water

Processes affecting water availability in soil and its effect on plant growth.

- Relationship of soil characteristics to infiltration and permeability rates.
- Cause and effect of water availability, water tables, natural springs, cultivation techniques and drainage.
- Water stress on soils, including drought and flooding.
- Water content and the relationship between:
 - gravitational water and saturation point
 - capillary rise and field capacity
 - hygroscopic action and permanent wilting point
 - moisture holding and water holding capacity.

C Managing plant growth media**C1 Soil management**

Managing soil for optimum plant growth in indoor and outdoor soils, including protective environments, gardens, fields and sports turf.

- Soil aeration: purpose and methods.
- Integration of organic matter: purpose and methods.
- Irrigation methods, including water conservation: recycling and rain capture, plant choice, application timings, use of moisture-sensing equipment/computer control.
- Soil drainage methods, including changes to soil texture, water courses and ditches.
- Characteristics of fertilisers:
 - nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P) and potassium (K) ratios
 - length of nutrient release related to fertiliser form
 - application methods for liquid, granular, powder, pellets, granules, powders, prills, frits.
- Adjusting soil acidity and alkalinity: purpose and methods.
- Effects of over application of fertiliser on soil health and plant growth.
- Impact on environment of fertiliser leaching.

C2 Soil alternatives

Purposes and methods of using soil alternatives.

- Purpose of growing plants without the use of soil: yield increase, quicker growth, less use of chemicals, lower incidences of disease, recycling water solutions.
- Drip irrigation (slow feed system), deep water culture (root immersion in nutrient water supply), ebb and flow (periodic flooding of plants).
- Types and characteristics of non-soil material and loam-free composts:
 - large particle material, to include sand and gravel
 - fibrous material, to include sphagnum peat moss
 - porous and absorbent material, to include perlite, vermiculite, rock wool and oasis cubes
 - composted or aged material, to include pulverised bark, coconut coir.

Grade descriptors

To achieve a grade learners are expected to demonstrate these attributes across the essential content of the unit. The principle of best fit will apply in awarding grades.

Level 3 Pass

Learners demonstrate a basic understanding of the structures and functions of plant cells. They are able to identify the main features and requirements of plants as related to their growth. Learners demonstrate an understanding of the characteristics of different soil types and basic methods for managing and improving soil to promote healthy plant growth.

Level 3 Distinction

Learners demonstrate a thorough understanding of plant structure linked to function, from a cellular to whole plant level. They are able to articulate practices used in soil management for optimising plant growth and yield. Learners can analyse data and information relating to plant and soil science and management practices, interpreting this in order to draw reasoned conclusions. They can make connections between the characteristics of different soils, the requirements of plants and the potential implications of soil management practices.

Key words typically used in assessment

The following table shows the key words that will be used consistently by Pearson in our assessments to ensure learners are rewarded for demonstrating the necessary skills.

Please note: the list below will not necessarily be used in every paper/session and is provided for guidance only.

Command or term	Definition
Analyse	Present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination of information or data to interpret and study key trends and interrelationships.
Apply	Put knowledge, understanding or skills into action in a particular context.
Assess	Evaluate or estimate the nature, ability or quality of something.
Compare	Identify the main factors relating to two or more items/situations or aspects of a subject that is extended to explain the similarities, differences, advantages and disadvantages.
Complete	Place a word(s) or number(s) in a sentence, paragraph, table or graph to give the correct answer/sense.
Define	State or describe the nature, scope or meaning of a subject as objective facts.
Describe	Give an account in words of someone or something, including all of the relevant characteristics, qualities or events.
Discuss	Consider different aspects of a topic, how they interrelate and the extent to which they are important.
Draw	Create a graphical or visual representation of information.

Command or term	Definition
Explain	Understand the origins, functions and objectives of a subject and its suitability for purpose. Give reasons to support an opinion, view or argument, with clear details.
Give	Provide one or more piece(s) of information.
Identify	Establish or indicate the origin, nature or definitive character of something. Usually requires some key information to be selected from a given stimulus/source.
Label	Name or provide key information about a stimulus material.
Name	Give the correct term for something.
Outline	Provide a general description of key principles, usually in relation to a process, method or concept.
State	Express the condition of or facts about something definitely or clearly.

Links to other units

This is an underpinning unit for the qualification.

Employer involvement

Centres can involve employers in the delivery of this unit if there are local opportunities to do so. There is no specific guidance related to this unit.

Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors

Level: **3**

Unit type: **External**

Guided learning hours: **120**

Unit in brief

Learners critically explore contemporary issues in the land-based sectors through research and analysis.

Unit introduction

For those working in a land-based sector keeping up to date with issues affecting the sector, for example environmental politics, emerging technologies and working practices, is essential. When you are exploring contemporary issues, as well as being aware of the 'next big thing', you will need to be able to apply your skills to make judgements about the relevance and importance of the issue to the organisation or sector in which you work.

In this unit, you will study, from a range of perspectives, the different issues that affect your sector, and consider how information and knowledge is transferred across and between land-based industries. You will develop the skills needed to assess the validity and reliability of sources of information as well as how data and information are used or misused in different situations. These skills will help you to form reasoned opinions about the issues you come across in your working life. Completion of this unit will help you to progress to a management role or to self-employment in the land-based sector. The unit will also prepare you to study a higher education course in your chosen field.

Summary of assessment

This unit is assessed by a task set by Pearson, consisting of Part A and Part B. For Part A, learners will be given information relating to a specific contemporary issue in the land-based sector two weeks before the supervised assessment, in order to carry out monitored preparatory research. Learners are expected to spend approximately six hours on this research.

For Part B, learners will complete the set task using their preparatory research. The task will contain a number of activities enabling them to demonstrate their knowledge and understanding of contemporary issues. Learners will take Part B in a supervised assessment in a single two-hour and 30 minute session timetabled by Pearson.

The number of marks for the unit is 64.

The assessment availability is January and May/June each year. The first assessment availability is January 2021.

Sample assessment materials will be available to help centres prepare learners for assessment.

Assessment outcomes

AO1 Demonstrate understanding of how contemporary issues affect the land-based sectors

AO2 Demonstrate understanding of critical approaches to the reporting of contemporary issues in the land-based sectors

AO3 Analyse information and data from a range of sources to draw conclusions and present findings related to contemporary issues in the land-based sectors

AO4 Evaluate the relevance and validity of information on contemporary issues in the land-based sectors for given contexts

AO5 Make connections between differing perspectives when considering recommendations on contemporary issues in the land-based sectors

Essential content

The essential content is set out under content areas. Learners must cover all specified content before the assessment.

A Land-based contemporary issues

Learners investigate significant issues for the land-based sectors that are affected by current developments in the industries and for which information and research is made available.

Learners focus on cross-sector issues and issues related to their specific sub-sector.

A1 Issues facing the land-based sector

People and employment.

- Issues relating to: education; professionalisation of career paths; development and assessment of competencies, including certification and health and safety practices; managing physical and mental health; skills shortages and seasonal employment.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – age profile of industry, average wages; *countryside management* – urban job migration, purchasing of second homes in the countryside and the impact on rural services, impact of volunteers on employment opportunities; *forestry and arboriculture* – international trade, imports; *horticulture* – international sourcing.

Technology.

- Issues relating to: mechanisation and automation of systems and processes; technology in monitoring and precision of production; GPS and mapping technology.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – varietal improvement, reduction in emissions, research, use of robotics; *countryside management* – erosion control, environmental modelling, climate change modelling; *forestry and arboriculture* – clonal selection, genetic provenance; *horticulture* – development of protected growing techniques, extending the production season to reduce imports.

Land use.

- Issues relating to: loss of rural land to urbanisation; service and leisure focus.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – production efficiency, land cost in relation to production costs; *countryside management* – green belt development, impacts of tourists on designated geographic areas such as Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), fracking, quarrying, conflict arising from land use for conservation and land use for recreation and other uses resulting in habitat loss; *forestry and arboriculture* – plantation management; *horticulture* – land costs in relation to production or use.

Pests and pest control.

- Issues relating to: awareness of pests, including new threats and available controls, and their risks and limitations; development of resistance to control methods; control of transmissible plant disease.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – control of infectious livestock diseases, pesticide use; *countryside management* – impact of pesticides and herbicides on wild populations, impact and control of alien species, impact of the reintroduction of native predatory species; *forestry and arboriculture* – ash dieback, sudden oak death, phytosanitary precautions on imports; *horticulture* – biological and non-chemical controls, genetically modified organisms (GMOs).

Interaction with the public.

- Issues relating to: public opinion and differing perception of rural and urban populations; retail methods; access and rights of way.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – GMOs, ethical food production, educating public in food production; *countryside management* – tourism, diversification, education to increase understanding of wildlife and habitats; *forestry and arboriculture* – right to roam, use of forestry and woodland for leisure and recreation; *horticulture* – retail developments and planning, customers, users of amenity green space, public parks and public open spaces.

Environmental management.

- Issues relating to: environmental legislation, climate change and extreme weather events, sources of air, land and water pollution, waste, recycling, biodiversity.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – application of fertilisers, Nitrate Vulnerable Zones (NVZs), soil degradation and conservation, stewardship schemes; *countryside management* – environmental interactions, landfill waste, threats to native species, endangered species, disaster mitigation; *forestry and arboriculture* – short rotation coppice for electricity and heat production, land drainage for forestry, returning the landscape to pre-plantation state; *horticulture* – escaping and alien species.

Sustainability.

- Issues relating to: resource and waste management.
- Sub-sector specific issues, including: *agriculture* – food miles, organic production, anaerobic digestion, sustainable production techniques; *countryside management* – government grants for environmental enhancement, wind and solar power, anaerobic digestion; *forestry and arboriculture* – land renewal, afforestation, reforestation and deforestation, coppicing; *horticulture* – composting, use of non-renewable growing media, e.g. peat.

A2 Perspectives

Perspectives to explore and investigate contemporary issues.

- Political and ideological, including: national and international governments' views and policies, lobbyists, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and pressure groups.
- Economic, including: funding, cost-effectiveness, business performance.
- Social and cultural, including: history, the needs and views of people from different communities.
- Legal and ethical, including: constraints of national law and ethical considerations on actions.

B Sources of evidence, information and data

B1 Establishing validity and reliability of sources

Methods by which information is gained and disseminated through the industry, and approaches used to recognise reliable sources of information and establish the validity of claims made.

- Peer-review process, e.g. journals and papers.
- Organisations involved in research and development:
 - universities
 - commercial organisations
 - non-governmental government-sponsored bodies, e.g. Forestry Commission (FC), Forestry Commission Scotland, Natural Resources Wales (NRW)
 - UK government areas, e.g. Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra), Office for National Statistics (ONS)
 - charities and community organisations, e.g. National Trust, Forestry Commission (FC), Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (RSPB), Royal Horticultural Society (RHS)
 - media and dissemination of information
 - industry publications and reviews
 - radio and television programmes.

B2 Using evidence to explore contemporary issues

Determining the validity and reliability of sources of evidence available for the exploration of contemporary issues.

- Identifying relevant and reliable sources of information.
- Exploring diverse views and opinions, while recognising potential sources of bias, e.g. 'cherry-picking' evidence, potential gains for the author of endorsing products or opinions, prejudice, vested interest.

- Distinguishing between fact and opinion.
- Style and tone according to intended audience: use of photographs and diagrams, layout, language.
- Use and misrepresentation of information: primary and secondary evidence, reliance on out-of-date or unreliable sources.
- Differences between qualitative and quantitative data.
- Use and misuse of data, including: sample sizes, use of control groups, presentation, statistical significance.
- Interrogating research:
 - the research or activity that has been carried out
 - why the research or activity has been carried out
 - how stakeholders, groups, individuals and the public may be affected by the research or activity
 - the potential positive and negative implications of the research or activity.

C Using research to inform decisions

C1 Research methods

Methods and approaches enabling the development of supported arguments and decisions on contemporary issues.

- Types of research:
 - quantitative – collection and use of data, summarising data presented, inferences obtained from data sources
 - qualitative – gathering information from the written word, analysis of text, understanding reasons to develop opinions, exploratory research to extend knowledge.
- Reading methods:
 - skimming – basic quick reading to determine the quality of the information
 - scanning – reading to locate key words or phrases
 - extensive – reading for pleasure at a relaxed pace
 - intensive – in-depth reading of all the information.
- Researching information:
 - obtaining and selecting information, identifying key details and issues, examining case studies and scenarios
 - relevance of information through use of a variety of sources, books, magazines, journals and the internet.
- Organisation of information, e.g. significance of information and detail, grouping together related points of evidence.
- Analysis of information:
 - examining claims from conflicting interests and perspectives
 - references to factual information and evidence sources.

C2 Evidence-based reasoning

- Presenting researched arguments:
 - use of supporting and opposing evidence, including judgements on reliability and validity
 - presenting information and solutions in a range of formats
 - linking information to source material and use of referencing methods, e.g. Harvard referencing
 - structure of arguments and analysis: introductions, presentation and discussion of research evidence and sources accounting for different perspectives, summaries and conclusions.

Grade descriptors

To achieve a grade learners are expected to demonstrate these attributes across the essential content of the unit. The principle of best fit will apply in awarding grades.

Level 3 Pass

Learners will demonstrate a basic knowledge and understanding of current issues affecting the land-based sector. They will show an understanding of how knowledge is transferred through the sector, applying their knowledge and understanding of how data and information is obtained and presented to establish valid and reliable sources of information. They will be able to make straightforward connections between different issues in the sector and draw conclusions, giving reasoned, evaluative judgements of the sources.

Level 3 Distinction

Learners will be able to integrate relevant knowledge and understanding of current issues to demonstrate a deeper understanding of their own industry and the sector as a whole. They will show a sound understanding of the processes by which valid and reliable sources are judged. Learners will be able to interpret, analyse and evaluate sources of data and information, making effective links between these and their own research. They will apply their knowledge and understanding to rationally justify their own opinions and suggested courses of action, fully supporting their conclusions with appropriate and relevant evidence.

Key words typically used in assessment

The following table shows the key words that will be used consistently by Pearson in our assessments to ensure learners are rewarded for demonstrating the necessary skills.

Please note: the list below will not necessarily be used in every paper/session and is provided for guidance only.

Command or term	Definition
Contemporary issue	A topic or subject related to the land-based sectors as defined in the unit content (section A1).
Perspective	A viewpoint or approach from which to consider an issue, as defined in the unit content (section A2).
Scenario or context	An imagined or real-life situation used in assessment as a means to evidence understanding of an issue.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment and project materials
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners research work opportunities in the land-based sectors and the skills needed to attain them, developing communication and employability skills through study and work experience.

Unit introduction

Where do you picture yourself in five years' time? Do you know about the wide range of career opportunities open to you in the land-based sectors? Discovering these opportunities and understanding the skills and qualifications needed in order to gain employment in these sectors will help you to answer these questions as well as to plan your career.

In this unit, as well as investigating employment opportunities, you will examine how good communication and employability skills can improve your prospects in gaining and staying in employment. You will learn how and where to access information about employment vacancies and further courses of study as well as how to develop your curriculum vitae (CV) and adapt it for specific vacancies. You will also learn how to develop good communication, interview and customer service skills. You will apply for and take on available work experience roles in the sector and reflect on your own progress.

This unit will help prepare you for employment in the land-based sectors in areas such as forestry, arboriculture, aquaculture, landscaping, horticulture, fencing, fisheries management, floristry, gamekeeping, conservation, countryside management and wildlife management, and their related service industries. It will also help you progress to higher education in courses such as BSc (Hons) degrees in agriculture, countryside management, horticulture and forestry management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate employment opportunities in the land-based sectors to target progression
- B** Develop communication and interview skills to improve employment prospects in the land-based sectors
- C** Undertake work experience in the land-based sectors to contribute to personal and professional development.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate employment opportunities in the land-based sectors to target progression	A1 Scope of the land-based sectors A2 Requirements for progression A3 Relevant legislation for work placement opportunities	A portfolio of work-related learning research, completed application documents and mock interview outcomes, e.g. observation, video.
B Develop communication and interview skills to improve employment prospects in the land-based sectors	B1 Applying for work-related activities B2 Interview skills B3 Reflecting on preparation and performance	
C Undertake work experience in the land-based sectors to contribute to personal and professional development	C1 Practical work experience C2 Work behaviours C3 Reflecting on workplace practice	A report reflecting on work experience, informed by employer verification of participation and other feedback.

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate employment opportunities in the land-based sectors to target progression

A1 Scope of the land-based sectors

- Analysis of progression opportunities to determine desirability, suitability and feasibility.
- Land-based sectors – appropriate broad representation of current industries, e.g. production crops, agricultural livestock, aquaculture, environmental conservation, countryside management, fencing, fisheries management, floristry, gamekeeping and wildlife management, land-based engineering, landscaping, production and amenity horticulture, forestry and arboriculture.
- Opportunities – the range of career and progression opportunities available within chosen sector and opportunities within related sectors, e.g. retail, leisure, tourism, hospitality.
- Higher education – UCAS, entry requirements, student loans.
- Apprenticeships – requirements, timescales, pay scales, balance between academic and practical work, assessment, higher apprenticeships.
- Employment sectors:
 - public sector, e.g. education, government, local government, countryside officer/ranger, public grounds and parks
 - private sector, e.g. country parks, garden centres
 - voluntary sector or charities, e.g. wildlife trusts, wildlife parks.
- Employment sectors, to include an appropriate broad representation of current industries, e.g. agricultural sales, food production, aquaculture, floristry, production horticulture, land-based engineering.
- Self-employment, e.g. gamekeeper, agricultural contractor, arborist, gardener.

A2 Requirements for progression

Knowledge of formal and informal requirements for progression.

- Entry criteria, including qualifications, skills and knowledge.
- Self-management, including study skills, presentation and attitude, time management and planning.
- Exit criteria for specific progression routes.
- Soft skills, including communication, problem solving, individual and team and leadership skills, personal management.

A3 Relevant legislation for work placement opportunities

- Safeguarding at work placements.
- Contracts of employment and working hours (in relation to age), including zero-hours contracts/fixed-term/hourly-paid/permanent (full-/part-time) contracts, Working Time Regulations 1998, Pay As You Earn (PAYE), statutory leave, maternity/paternity leave, employment status.
- Different legal status of business: single owner (self-employed)/partnership/limited company/self-employed subcontractor.
- Awareness of the impact of current legislation supporting conduct in the workplace for employers and employees (full-time, part-time, casual, interns and work placements), such as:
 - Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974
 - Equality Act 2010
 - Data Protection Act 1998
 - Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002
 - Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations (RIDDOR) 2013
 - Animal Welfare Act 2006.

Learning aim B: Develop communication and interview skills to improve employment prospects in the land-based sectors

B1 Applying for work-related activities

- Selection of work, including different sources of vacancies such as websites, trade publications and sector-wide bodies, e.g. Lantra.
- Importance of reading job description, personal specification, including relevance of essential or desirable criteria, to include qualifications, skills, experience.
- Completion of CV and adapting CV or job application to specified vacancy.
- Letters of application, supporting statements and completing application forms, to include standing out from the crowd, addressing relevance to employers and how they might shortlist candidates.
- Correct use of language, grammar, spelling and punctuation.

B2 Interview skills

Creating an impression through effective communication.

- Preparation and presentation skills, including:
 - planning and practice for the interview
 - interview styles, e.g. competency or behaviour-based, knowledge-focused
 - personal appearance and hygiene
 - interpersonal skills and attitude
 - body language.
- Listening and talking skills, including:
 - interview conventions
 - use of language – what is/what is not appropriate
 - building rapport
 - developing a dialogue
 - effective listening and questioning
 - non-verbal communication, e.g. eye contact.

B3 Reflecting on preparation and performance

- Reflecting on preparation for interviews and interview performance, including knowledge of employer and role, communication skills, professional behaviour.

Learning aim C: Undertake work experience in the land-based sectors to contribute to personal and professional development

C1 Practical work experience

Operating in workplace practices, including:

- knowledge of the purpose of the business and/or environment
- knowledge of reporting procedures with regard to behaviour and expectations, e.g. lateness, sickness, emergency
- health and safety protocols, e.g. fire safety, emergency procedures
- procedures to maintain confidentiality.

C2 Work behaviours

- Completion of role to add value in the workplace:
 - understanding the extent and limitation of own roles and responsibilities
 - carrying out tasks according to roles and responsibilities
 - following instructions
 - communicating with others
 - self-management
 - working safely
 - reliability, regular attendance and commitment
 - punctuality
 - use of initiative
 - cooperation with colleagues and end users, e.g. customers, clients, other organisations.
- Obtaining feedback, including:
 - timesheets signed by an appointed person at work experience employment, confirming appropriate attendance and punctuality
 - employer or teacher observation/witness statements
 - employer feedback sheets, provided at intervals.

C3 Reflecting on workplace practice

Reflecting on personal performance in relation to own career progression, to include:

- formative feedback from employer(s), colleagues, teacher, stakeholders
- performance self-assessment
- review of areas for development, to include SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats) analysis, SMART (specific, measurable, achievable, relevant, time-based) target setting, knowledge of SWOT and SMART in learning development.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate employment opportunities in the land-based sectors to target progression		
<p>A.P1 Explain the value of own research and preparation carried out for work experience, related opportunities and progression routes.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain accurately the relevant legislation relating to a work placement.</p>	<p>A.M1 Analyse the value of own research and preparation carried out for work experience, related opportunities and progression routes.</p>	
Learning aim B: Develop communication and interview skills to improve employment prospects in the land-based sectors		<p>A.D1 Evaluate how effective preparation for work experience can significantly enhance employment prospects.</p> <p>B.D2 Evaluate own preparation for and performance in work experience interview, including review of all future opportunities.</p>
<p>B.P3 Explain the preparation and research carried out for a work experience interview.</p> <p>B.P4 Demonstrate communication and interpersonal skills as an interviewee for a selected work experience.</p>	<p>B.M2 Perform proficiently as an interviewee for a selected work experience, using appropriate communication and interpersonal skills.</p>	
Learning aim C: Undertake work experience in the land-based sectors to contribute to personal and professional development		<p>C.D3 Evaluate the effectiveness of the work experience carried out in improving occupational and personal skills to make best use of opportunities for employment.</p>
<p>C.P5 Explain how the work experience undertaken has improved occupational and personal skills for future opportunities.</p> <p>C.P6 Review how own performance during work experience contributed to the employer.</p>	<p>C.M3 Assess the value of the occupational and personal skills developed during work experience for future opportunities.</p> <p>C.M4 Analyse the impact on the employer of own performance during work experience.</p>	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aims: A and B (A.P1, A.P2, B.P3, B.P4, A.M1, B.M2, A.D1, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M3, C.M4, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to a work experience role, for example work placement, part-time work, volunteering etc. Employers must be external to the centre.

Teachers should consider devising a set of criteria they can use to give feedback when carrying out practice interviews.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aims A and B

For distinction standard, learners will produce a written report evaluating the quality of their own preparation when seeking work experience. This will include their investigation and research carried out, completion of application documents adapted for specific roles, and completion of a mock interview or employer-evidenced real interview. The report will include conclusions about the quality of each step of the preparation, linking this to the teacher's evaluation of the mock interview and the chance of securing employment. Learners will write a conclusion that includes clear understanding of best practice in this area.

For merit standard, learners will produce a written analysis of the quality of their own preparation when seeking work experience. This will include their investigation and research carried out, completion of application documents adapted for specific roles, and completion of a good mock interview or employer-evidenced real interview. The analysis will include a detailed examination of each step of the preparation, linking this to the chance of securing employment. Learners will include an analysis of the teacher's evaluation of the mock interview.

For pass standard, learners will consider the value of their own preparation when seeking work experience, for example investigation and research carried out, completion of application documents adapted to specific roles, and completion of a mock interview or employer-evidenced real interview. Learners will include links to the teacher's evaluation of the mock interview. Learners could include a SWOT analysis.

Learning aim C

Learners need to review and reflect on their time undertaking work experience. This will relate to the number of hours required by the qualification.

For distinction standard, learners will undertake work experience and supply reasoning in their reflective reports to determine the effectiveness of the completed work experience and its capacity to improve their opportunities for employment. Their reasoning will consider the relationship between the occupational and personal skills developed during the work experience and how these may help them in securing future employment. The relationship between learners' own performance during work experience and its impact on the employer will also be covered. Learners will consider how well they prepared themselves for the work experience activities in order to gain the most from the experience(s). Learners' reflections should take account of employer and teacher feedback, and observations of them during their work experience.

For merit standard, learners will undertake work experience and present in their reflective reports a relationship between the occupational and personal skills developed during the work experience, and a discussion about how these skills will help secure employment. Learners will consider the relationship between their own performance during the work experience and its impact on the employer. Learners' reflections should take account of employer and teacher feedback, and observations of them during their work experience.

For pass standard, learners will undertake work experience and present in their reflective reports a consideration of how they developed different occupational and personal skills during their placement. Learners will make a formal assessment of their own performance during work experience based on feedback, including a SWOT analysis, and link this to their contribution to the employer. Learners' reflections should take account of employer and teacher feedback, and observations of them during their work experience.

Links to other units

This unit links with all others in the specification.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners select and apply the skills required to undertake the key vocational task of management and maintenance of countryside environment physical infrastructure and habitats.

Unit introduction

A key part of the role of countryside rangers, wardens and estate managers is the management of the physical environment of the countryside. Employment in these roles means you need to be able to maintain, repair and install a variety of different structures, surfaces, boundaries and services. You will maintain habitats, ensuring that work is carried out efficiently and safely. You also need to be able to manage the contractors who carry out these types of task.

In this unit, you will manage estates skills activities, including the planning and implementation of projects carried out by you or others, such as staff or professional contractors. You will develop the knowledge and skills needed to manage the repair, maintenance and installation of the fabric of businesses and organisations that work in the countryside. You will draw on your knowledge of professional practice in the sector.

This unit contains the key vocational assessment task of planning and managing countryside estate skills operations. You will need to select and apply knowledge and skills that you developed in your study of the mandatory content and your wider learning from across the programme. You will also select and apply your knowledge and skills from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* and will use your experience of the real work practices that you gained in *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

This unit will give you the skills you need to progress to employment as a fieldwork assistant, an assistant warden or to work as part of an estate management team. It is also an excellent introduction to a degree in estate management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Explore estate skills for the management and maintenance of habitats and environments
- B** Plan estate skills operations for countryside management
- C** Carry out estate skills activities to meet the needs of countryside maintenance and management.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Explore estate skills for the management and maintenance of habitats and environments	A1 Countryside estate skills A2 Estate skills methods, equipment and materials A3 Methods of working and workforce supervision	Recommended portfolio evidence includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an investigation of countryside management estate skills activities and working methods • the demonstration of selected practical estate skills tasks.
B Plan estate skills operations for countryside management	B1 Assessing needs B2 Planning activities	The planning and management of countryside estate skills activities to meet the needs of countryside users.
C Carry out estate skills activities to meet the needs of countryside maintenance and management	C1 Working professionally C2 Supervising activities C3 Evaluating estate skills activities	Recommended evidence includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • surveys • planning documents – schedules, job specifications • logbooks, observation records and witness statements of activities undertaken • a review management performance. Learners will be expected to select and apply learning from other mandatory units and optional units as appropriate.

Content

Learning aim A: Explore estate skills for the management and maintenance of habitats and environments

A1 Countryside estate skills

The form and function of countryside elements.

- Boundaries, including:
 - deer or rabbit fencing, electric fencing, stock fencing, and post and rail fencing
 - decorative fencing.
- Surfaces, including:
 - paths, tracks, rides, accommodation flooring, grassed surfaces
 - drainage of surfaces, including field drains.
- Structures to provide for countryside management, including:
 - field structures, e.g. field shelters, stiles and way markers, greenhouses
 - gates and water troughs
 - internal structures, e.g. drinkers, stall furniture and feeders
 - finishes, including paints, varnishes and preservatives.
- Supply, distribution or storage of mains services and utilities, including:
 - water and gas, including bottled gas, electricity, fuel, oil
 - sewerage, including mains, cesspit and septic tank.
- Habitat maintenance for countryside management, including:
 - weed and invasive plant control, scrub clearance, hedgerow cutting and layering
 - wildlife refuges, e.g. nesting and resting boxes, woodpiles, hedgehog tunnels.

A2 Estate skills methods, equipment and materials

Skills, methods, equipment and materials used in the maintenance, repair, installation and construction of countryside elements.

- Common, general purpose tools:
 - hand tools, e.g. hammers, screwdrivers, saws
 - power tools, e.g. drills, mitre saws, sanders.
- Specialised tools:
 - hand tools, e.g. fence strainers, wire strand jointing clamps, billhooks, tap wrenches
 - power tools, e.g. stone cutters, brushcutters, chainsaws.
- Materials:
 - basic construction materials, e.g. wood, concrete, woodchip, tarmac, type 1 aggregate, fencing, galvanised sheets, polypropylene piping
 - coatings and their application, e.g. paint, preservatives, varnishes.
- Specialist equipment, e.g. cement mixer, generator, ATV, non-contact electrical testing.
- Construction and repair methods used for estate skills activities:
 - measuring and marking out horizontal and vertical straight lines, angles and curves
 - cutting, shaping and smoothing methods for wood, metal, stone/concrete, pipework and cables
 - fixings and jointing for wood, metal, plasterboard, stone/concrete, pipework and cables.
- Methods of correct storage, transport and maintenance of tools, equipment and materials for security, condition and safety:
 - use of lockers, storage racks, storage boxes, holdalls
 - grinding, sharpening, lubrication methods and materials
 - fault finding, replacement of worn or broken parts.

- Practical estates activities:
 - maintenance, repair construction and installation of boundaries, surfaces, structures
 - drainage
 - habitats
 - isolation of mains services in the event of leaks or for maintenance, repair, construction and installation activities
 - use of basic equipment to locate underground or hidden services
 - installation of temporary electric supply
 - repair, maintenance or installation of systems to supply water.

A3 Methods of working and workforce supervision

- Advantages and disadvantages of different methods of workforce organisation, including, lone working, use of in-house skills and labour, use of contractors, skilled practitioners.
- Identifying skill sets, e.g. internal workforce, external contractors.
- Working standards – novice, competent and professional practitioner – to include working to time, quality of finished product, efficiency of working methods, environmental impacts.
- Communicating maintenance, repair, construction and installation needs to in-house teams and outside contractors, to include raising orders, issuing instructions orally and in writing, getting estimates and quotations, commissioning contractors and understanding contracts.
- Using written communication skills, including using correct spelling, punctuation and grammar, adopting different styles, e.g. formal and informal.
- Using oral communication skills:
 - using tone, inflexion and style when speaking
 - using aids, e.g. maps, plans.

Learning aim B: Plan estate skills operations for countryside management

In undertaking the key vocational task, planning and carrying out estate skills operations and activities, learners must select and apply learning from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* and *Unit 4: Working in the Land-based Sectors*.

B1 Assessing needs

Inspection of boundaries, surfaces, structures, services and habitats.

- Inspecting boundaries, surfaces, habitats and structures for their maintenance, repair, construction and installation needs.
- Inspection and basic fault finding of electrical circuits and devices using non-contact test equipment.
- Inspection of drainage, gas and water services for leaks and blockages.
- Methods and processes for reporting inspection findings, to include verbal and written, use of appropriate maps, plans and diagrams.

B2 Planning activities

- Accounting for regulations and codes of practice relating to flora and fauna.
- Health and safety, e.g. risk assessments, personal protective equipment (PPE).
- Assessing ranges and quantities, e.g. use of maps, diagrams, plans, measurements, estimates.
- Scheduling one-off or regular tasks, e.g. daily, monthly, annually.
- Job specifications, to include job description and rationale, timescales, tools, equipment, materials, location of work, costs, skill sets, health and safety considerations, environmental issues and supervising arrangements.
- Sourcing tools, equipment, materials, skill sets, e.g. internal workforce, external contractors.
- Processes and aids to planning activities, including budgets, schedules and flow charts.
- The use of IT in raising and monitoring repair and maintenance tasks.
- Communications with contractors and employees to ensure efficient planning.
- Creating evaluation frameworks for assessing workforce management, to include: communications, supervision and monitoring, contingency planning, reporting outcomes.

Learning aim C: Carry out estate skills activities to meet the needs of countryside maintenance and management

C1 Working professionally

- Compliance with appropriate health and safety regulations and guidance.
- Preparation of the work area.
- Selection, transportation and use of the correct tools, equipment and materials.
- Waste disposal in accordance with regulations.
- Maintaining and storing tools, equipment and materials.

C2 Supervising activities

- Ensuring the work is proceeding according to expectations, e.g. site visits, problem solving and evaluating the progress of estate skills activities, ensuring compliance with specifications, checking the progress of work against the specification, regulations and codes of practice and risk assessments.
- Using problem-solving skills to assess issues, examine alternative solutions, decide on a course of action, implement solutions and monitor outcomes.

C3 Evaluating estate skills activities

Process for reviewing and evaluating estate skills activities.

- Use of contingency actions and problem-solving techniques.
- Timing – planned against actual time taken.
- Identifying inefficient working practices.
- Monitoring actual costs against estimates and identifying cost overruns.
- Examining specifications to improve clarity and eliminate ambiguity.
- Monitoring compliance with regulations, guidance and advice notes.
- Assessing communication to identify improvements.
- Using evaluation frameworks to enable assessment of completed activities and workforce management:
 - evaluating processes and completed products, including compliance with specifications, regulations, and codes of practice and risk assessments
 - communicating evaluation outcomes, ensuring correct task completion, including situations where there is a dispute.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Explore estate skills for the management and maintenance of habitats and environments		A.D1 Evaluate methods and approaches used to manage estate skills activities, referencing own performance of complex estate skills demonstrated to a professional standard.
A.P1 Explain working methods and practices for carrying out estate skills activities. A.P2 Appropriately select and apply estates skills tasks.	A.M1 Assess approaches to managing estate skills activities. A.M2 Effectively select and apply complex estates skills tasks.	
Learning aim B: Plan estate skills operations for countryside management		B.D2 Justify selected planning decisions for comprehensive estate skills activities from own detailed inspections, arising from the selection and use of inspection techniques.
B.P3 Select and use inspection techniques for estates skills activities. B.P4 Produce an estate skills management plan, explaining reasons for selected planning decisions.	B.M3 Select and use inspection techniques, performing detailed inspections and producing a complex estate skills management plan with a rationale for selected planning decisions.	
Learning aim C: Carry out estate skills activities to meet the needs of countryside maintenance and management		C.D3 Fully manage own tasks and workforce supervision for complex professional estate skills activities, justifying the effectiveness of approaches adopted and detailing improvements.
C.P5 Manage own tasks and workforce supervision of professional estate skills activities, reviewing the effectiveness of tasks.	C.M4 Effectively manage own tasks and workforce supervision of professional estate skills activities, analysing the effectiveness for countryside management.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.M2, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, B.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of common and specialist hand tools, including power tools and testing equipment
- suitable PPE
- a wide range of suitable estate skills activities, including the provision of mains and temporary services.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

In completing the assessment, learners should draw on knowledge of working practices from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* and of sector standards from *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

For distinction standard, learners will produce a comprehensive analysis of different estate skills activities and the importance of carrying them out to a good standard, together with a detailed examination of working practices with well-reasoned analysis of their effectiveness in different situations, including the consequences where methods and practices do not meet expected standards.

Learners will carry out complex activities that require multiple operations, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. Activities will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting an agreed specification that includes working to the standard of a professional practitioner.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate a broad understanding of a range of estate skills activities to show the need for good maintenance, repair and installation of environments and habitats. They will be able to show detailed links between estate skills activities, good construction methods, working practices, methods of working and supervision. They will identify the impact of these on the effectiveness of environmental and habitat management.

Learners will carry out complex activities for a range of estate skills tasks that require multiple operations, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. Activities will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting an agreed specification that includes working to the standard of a competent employee.

For pass standard, learners will explain the importance of maintenance, repair and installation estate skills activities. They will explain the need for good working practices, including good storage, transport and maintenance of tools, materials and equipment. Learners will explain different construction methods, methods of working, for example lone working, use of contractors; and the factors affecting workforce supervision.

Learners will carry out a range of simple estate skills activities, requiring few operations and a limited range of tools and materials. Activities will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting an agreed specification that includes working to the standard of a novice employee.

Learning aims B and C

In completing the assessment for learning aims B and C, learners must individually plan and carry out countryside estate skills activities. They are required to independently select, apply and demonstrate appropriate knowledge and skills relating to working practices from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* and of sector standards from *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

For distinction standard, learners will conduct surveys of countryside establishments. They will use a range of appropriate test equipment independently and proficiently. They will readily understand complex estate skills issues, considering causes and making connections with usage and consequences if unaddressed, exploring the situation thoroughly. Learners will present meticulous findings in the form of annotated maps, plans, diagrams and accompanying notes. They will be assured in their assessment of issues and their decisions in respect of repair, maintenance or installation needs.

Learners will produce comprehensive and flexible plans, reprioritising tasks where appropriate in order to use time and resources efficiently. Plans will include a detailed appraisal of work required and a thoroughly considered, time-specific schedule of work. Learners will give a clear rationale for all their recommendations, demonstrating detailed awareness of the influence of relevant governing legislation and codes of practice, and the impact on the establishment if the work is delayed or not completed. Job specifications produced will be comprehensive. Learners will show that they have considered how their plans will be effective in terms of, for example, use of resources, completion of tasks, meeting identified needs.

Learners will manage a complex estate skills activity that requires multiple operations, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. Activities will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, fully meeting the plan they have devised for the task.

Learners will review the qualitative standard of practical work undertaken to improve the completion of activities, supporting their views with reasoned judgements.

Learners will carry out effective and comprehensive workforce supervision that demonstrates clear, concise, unambiguous, oral and written communications suited to the recipients, such as contractors or colleagues.

Learners will delegate responsibilities appropriately, according to skill sets and resources. They will monitor and assess task progression, advising only when necessary, using positive and flexible problem-solving skills when needed. They will assess the completed task against the specification and communicate their findings concisely and assertively.

Learners will draw up a valid and reliable evaluation framework to use when justifying their approaches to management of completed activities. They will identify specific areas where their management of the task could have improved efficiency, safety or cost-effectiveness and will make valid recommendations to achieve this.

For merit standard, learners will conduct surveys of countryside establishments. They will use a range of appropriate test equipment safely and without supervision. They will interrogate the causes of issues, suggesting remedial action and, where appropriate, prevention in relation to repair, maintenance or installation needs. They will explore the complexity of faults and issues, considering less obvious factors. Learners will present detailed findings in the form of annotated maps, plans, diagrams and accompanying notes.

Learners will plan proactively with clear timescales for repair, maintenance and installation needs. Their plans will clearly demonstrate an understanding of the need to prioritise work and an appreciation of realistic timescales and resources. Their planning will demonstrate a detailed assessment of the work required and a time-specific schedule of work. Consideration will be given to relevant governing legislation and codes of practice. Job specifications produced will be clear and detailed.

Learners will manage a complex estate skills activity that requires multiple operations, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. Learners will demonstrate best workplace practice by ensuring safety in accordance with relevant legislation and fulfilling the plan they have devised for the task.

Learners will review approaches adopted and their own work in light of the job specification and the standard achieved, giving valid suggestions for improvements in activities.

Learners will demonstrate they can communicate clearly and appropriately with a workforce, such as contractors or colleagues, both orally and in writing.

Learners will delegate responsibilities. They will accurately assess the progress of a complex task and demonstrate problem-solving skills when needed. They will communicate appropriately their assessment of the progress of a task.

Learners will use an accurate framework to analyse the approaches and implementation of maintenance and management, covering all key issues, developments and factors that were affected.

For pass standard, learners will conduct surveys of countryside establishments. They will use a range of appropriate test equipment, under supervision where necessary. Learners will understand major issues and correctly identify methods of repair, maintenance or installation. They will record correct findings appropriate to each situation surveyed, presenting the information in the form of annotated maps, plans, diagrams and accompanying notes. The notes and annotations will give clear reasoning for their findings.

Learners' plans will address key repair, maintenance and installation needs, correctly prioritising works using broad timescales. Where appropriate, their plans will take into account governing legislation and codes of practice. Job specifications produced will contain key information.

Learners will manage an estate skills activity, demonstrating acceptable workplace practice, including ensuring safe working practice in accordance with relevant legislation and following the plan they have devised.

Learners will demonstrate that they can issue workforce instructions, both orally and in writing. They will carry out supervision of activities, including checks on progress and identifying obvious issues that may hinder task completion to the specification. Where problems occur, learners will make suggestions and may intervene directly. Learners will give feedback to the workforce on the progress of the task.

Learners will use a framework to review the approaches and implementation of maintenance and management, covering key issues and developments.

Links to other units

For the Pearson BTEC National Extended Certificate in Countryside Management and the Pearson BTEC National Foundation Diploma in Countryside Management, this unit should be completed towards the end of the programme. In order to complete the synoptic assessment task in this unit, learners should build on their learning from across the mandatory content, selecting and applying appropriate knowledge and skills, including safe working practice from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* and sector standards and approaches from *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses and technical workshops involving staff from local countryside- and land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to investigate different types of UK habitats, the threats these habitats face and gain the practical knowledge required to correctly carry out habitat surveys.

Unit introduction

The importance of habitat management continues to grow as issues relating to urban sprawl increasingly impact our daily lives. Effective management of UK habitats relies on obtaining and interpreting quantitative data on habitats and their potential threats. The majority of this data comes from industry standard surveying methods. In order to work in environmental management, you must have relevant skills and knowledge relating to UK habitats, pollution, and native and non-native species. You will need an understanding of the development of habitat management plans.

In this unit, you will learn how to identify a range of UK habitats and the impacts of human disturbance, invasive species and pollution. This will include checking habitats for native and non-native species, learning how to carry out industry standard surveying techniques, and how to create a habitat management plan. To complete the assessment task within this unit, you will need to draw on your learning from across your programme.

This unit will help you progress to employment in roles such as an estate operative, fieldwork assistant or assistant researcher, or to higher education courses such as degrees in rural resource management or ecology, or to foundation degree courses in areas such as conservation management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand characteristics of different types of UK habitats
- B** Investigate the impact of native and non-native species and pollution on different types of UK habitats
- C** Carry out a survey of a UK habitat to plan its management.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand characteristics of different types of UK habitats	<p>A1 The different types of urban habitats in the UK</p> <p>A2 The different types of lowland habitats in the UK</p> <p>A3 The different types of upland habitats in the UK</p> <p>A4 Human disturbance and its impact on UK habitats</p>	A report that evaluates a range of different UK habitats, including species that inhabit them and human disturbances found in these areas.
B Investigate the impact of native and non-native species and pollution on different types of UK habitats	<p>B1 Key factors and impacts associated with native and non-native species</p> <p>B2 Key factors and impacts associated with pollution</p>	A portfolio of evidence, including research into native and non-native species, evaluating how invasive species and pollution have contributed to population changes in two contrasting UK habitats.
C Carry out a survey of a UK habitat to plan its management	<p>C1 Planning surveys</p> <p>C2 Carrying out ecological surveys</p> <p>C3 Creating a habitat management plan</p>	Evidence of survey planning, methodology and a management plan. This may include images, maps and identification keys.

Content

Learning aim A: Understand characteristics of different types of UK habitats

A1 The different types of urban habitats in the UK

Towns and cities, to include:

- the value of urban biodiversity
- the potential impact of educational and conservation influences on habitats
- conservation projects and status
- current habitat management methods, to include summary of recent findings, targeted species, aims and objectives of plan, timeline
- areas that serve as potential habitat, food sources, protection and as corridors for wildlife dispersal, e.g. hedgerows, verges, wasteland, parks, canals, streams, docklands, rooftops, gardens.

A2 The different types of lowland habitats in the UK

- Lowland habitat differentiation, to include:
 - lowland heathland
 - lowland wetland
 - calcareous grassland, dry acid grassland, lowland purple moor grass, rush pasture and lowland meadows.
- The potential impact of educational and conservation influences on habitats.
- Conservation projects and status.
- Current habitat management methods, to include summary of recent findings, targeted species, aims and objectives of plan, timeline.
- Potential habitats, food sources and safe havens for wildlife and protected species.

A3 The different types of upland habitats in the UK

- Diverse range of upland habitats, e.g. blanket bog, upland heathland, inland rock and scree habitats, mountain heaths, willow scrub.
- Upland calcareous grassland, fens and swamps.
- The potential impact of educational and conservation influences on habitats.
- Conservation projects and status.
- Current habitat management methods, to include summary of recent findings, targeted species, aims and objectives of plan, timeline.
- Potential habitats, food sources and safe havens for wildlife and protected species.

A4 Human disturbance and its impact on UK habitats

- Human disturbance and how this can lead to reduction in populations or eradication of species from the habitat.
- Dispersal and impact of human disturbance on dispersal, to include how established wildlife paths can be disrupted, how seed dispersal can be prevented.
- Issues associated with rubbish, e.g. how this can be used as a food source by wildlife but can also be harmful and hazardous.
- The influence of pets on wild populations.
- The impact of development and urban sprawl on wildlife, e.g. loss of habitat, loss of food sources.
- The impact of other types of factors associated with human disturbance, e.g. climate change, excessive recreation pressure.

Learning aim B: Investigate the impact of native and non-native species and pollution on different types of UK habitats

B1 Key factors and impacts associated with native and non-native species

- Problems caused by native species, including:
 - over-colonisation
 - competition for resources.
- Problems caused by non-native species, including:
 - predation
 - competition for resources
 - introduction of new diseases
 - hybridisation.
- The origin of and introduction method of invasive species, e.g. human introduction, via freight ships, via imported produce.
- Common native species in habitat ranges, e.g. upland, lowland, urban.
- The impact of invasive species on existing native species, e.g. red squirrel (*Sciurus vulgaris*), water vole (*Arvicola amphibious*), giant hogweed (*Heracleum mantegazzianum*), Japanese knotweed (*Fallopia japonica*), rhododendron, ringed Parakeets (*Psittacula krameri*), American signal crayfish (*Pacifastacus leniusculus*).
- The introduction of new disease to native species and its impact on population numbers, including grey squirrel (*Sciurus carolinensis*) pox virus introduction.
- The introduction of species that can affect both native species and humans in relevant areas, e.g. Oxford ragwort (*Senecio squalidus*) and giant hogweed (*Heracleum mantegazzianum*), American weasel (*Mustela nivalis*).

B2 Key factors and impacts associated with pollution

- The impacts and methods of dealing with different types of pollution associated with specific habitats, including acid rain, rubbish, chemical spills, dog excrement, pesticide and fertiliser run off.
- The impact and methods of dealing with land contamination associated with specific habitats, including fly tipping, litter, hazardous waste, landfill.
- A range of methods for monitoring pollution, including water quality management and using invertebrates as biological indicators, soil samples and plant species as pollution indicators.
- The importance of pollution education.

Learning aim C: Carry out a survey of a UK habitat to plan its management

C1 Planning surveys

- Key factors in planning ecological surveys for different habitat types.
- Industry standard surveying, to include Phase 1 habitat surveys, National Vegetation Classification (NVC), invasive species identification.
- Knowledge of the types of specialist surveys used in the industry, e.g. great crested newt, badger surveys, reptile surveys.
- Health and safety considerations when planning surveys in different environmental settings, e.g. personal protective equipment (PPE), weather, terrain, injuries to fauna species, potential dangers in bogs, marshes.
- UK environmental legislation considerations and their relevance to environmental surveying, to include:
 - Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981
 - Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations 2010 (as amended).

C2 Carrying out ecological surveys

Principles of carrying out an ecological habitat survey, to include:

- a Phase 1 habitat survey in a selected habitat
- identification of native and non-native species.

C3 Creating a habitat management plan

- Role of habitat management plans, e.g. required by planning, enhancing natural heritage sites, conservation, restoring or enhancing habitat, off-setting habitat loss, managing native and non-native species.
- Purpose, e.g. making habitat more suitable for specific species, group of species, establishing/maintaining species, improving habitat to attract a variety of native wildlife and species.
- Considerations, including wildlife habitat relationship, existing land use.
- Key elements of management plan, to include summary of findings, purpose, habitat imagery and description, target species, aim and objectives and timeline.
- Potential suggestions for management improvements, e.g. removal of non-native species, blocking off area to public, creating barriers, introducing new native species, bird boxes, improving on wildlife/habitat relationships.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand characteristics of different types of UK habitats		A.D1 Evaluate environmental habitats and their value to UK species, incorporating current habitat management plans.
A.P1 Explain the importance of UK habitats for native flora and fauna. A.P2 Explain the threats to wildlife populations in UK habitats due to human disturbance.	A.M1 Compare and contrast the benefits of two different UK habitats for native flora and fauna, considering current threats and management practices.	
Learning aim B: Investigate the impact of native and non-native species and pollution on different types of UK habitats		B.D2 Evaluate how invasive species and pollution have contributed to population changes in two contrasting UK habitats.
B.P3 Explain the threats facing UK species due to invasive species. B.P4 Explain the threats facing wildlife in two contrasting UK habitats due to pollution.	B.M2 Analyse the impact of invasive species and pollution in two contrasting UK habitats.	
Learning aim C: Carry out a survey of a UK habitat to plan its management		C.D3 Carry out a UK habitat survey with a high degree of accuracy, producing a comprehensive management plan.
C.P5 Carry out a survey of one selected UK habitat safely. C.P6 Produce future aims and objectives for the UK habitat surveyed.	C.M3 Proficiently carry out a UK habitat survey, analysing the suitability of a basic management plan.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of three summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aim: B (B.P3, B.P4, B.M2, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M3, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a minimum of two contrasting habitat sites suitable for detailed survey work
- survey equipment, including transects, tape measure, species ID books
- Phase 1 survey handbook
- library and specialist texts
- the internet for websites, including Joint Nature Conservation Committee (JNCC).

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will show depth and breadth of understanding in evaluating how human impacts on UK habitats could be both positive and negative. They will apply valid, specific knowledge from researching UK urban, upland and lowland habitats in a logical way. Their comprehensive evaluation will be based on properly referenced information and will include accurate references to threats, example species and current management practices. Learners will demonstrate robust understanding of the complexity of human impacts and include insightful judgements concerning their value to specific UK species. The evidence will make use of appropriate, accurate environmental terminology throughout.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate their breadth of understanding of two selected UK habitats and will make reasonable, analytical judgements on the benefits and dangers of living in a selected environment for UK flora and fauna. They will demonstrate their understanding of how both habitats provide for the needs of UK species, as well as identifying the threats that the habitats present and current management practices. The evidence will be detailed and supported by mostly relevant examples. It will be structured and use appropriate environmental terminology.

For pass standard, learners will provide a realistic explanation of UK urban, upland and lowland habitats. They will provide appropriate habitat identification, including some relevant location examples and descriptions, commenting on their importance for UK species. Learners will demonstrate a realistic but limited understanding of the impact of threats such as urban sprawl, pets and other forms of human disturbance on UK habitats and species. There may be some minor irrelevancies or imbalance in the evidence and some environmental terminology may be omitted.

Learning aim B

For distinction standard, learners will show the breadth and depth of their understanding by thoroughly evaluating the impacts and destruction caused by invasive species and pollution for two contrasting types of habitat. They will articulate robust, specific arguments on how these factors have contributed to population changes in their two selected sites. The evidence will be comprehensive and supported by fully relevant examples.

For merit standard, learners will make reasoned, analytical judgements on the negative impacts that they have evidenced or concluded from non-UK species and a range of pollutants in two contrasting types of habitat. Learners will clearly show the effects of predation, competition and introduction of new diseases from non-native species on selected UK species. The evidence will be detailed and supported by mostly relevant examples.

For pass standard, learners will provide an appropriate explanation of the threats facing UK species from invasive species and pollutants. Learners will explain the problems caused by the introduction of non-native species, and the impacts and management of common pollution issues. However, their explanations may be generic or limited in scope.

Learning aim C

For distinction standard, learners will produce a comprehensive, convincing habitat management plan that is detailed and clearly presented. They will articulate arguments concisely and professionally in order to justify future habitat management suggestions. This should include comprehensive aims and objectives, a clear plan linked to flora and fauna and targeted species, a suggested timeframe, and clear suggestions for improvements that are fully relevant when moving forward from survey findings. Learners' rationale should be based on relevant primary data, supported by additional, referenced research. The evidence will make use of appropriate technical language throughout.

For merit standard, learners will competently carry out a habitat survey and make clear, reasonable, analytical judgements on the outcomes of their survey. They will apply survey findings when developing a basic management plan, incorporating the key elements of the plan. This should include developed aims and objectives, the overall purpose of the plan and target species. The evidence will be detailed and supported by mostly relevant examples. It will be structured and use appropriate technical language.

For pass standard, learners will carry out a habitat survey safely and competently. They will show that they can work efficiently and with due regard for other people, animal welfare and the environment. Learners should be competent in the basic planning of a survey, to include relevant health and safety considerations.

Learners will produce basic aims and objectives suited to the development of a management plan. The aims and objectives will be realistic and based on the habitat surveyed. There may be some minor irrelevancies in the evidence and some relevant technical language may be omitted.

Links to other units

The assessment for this unit should draw on knowledge, understanding and skills developed from:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science
- Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities.

This unit would also relate to the teaching of:

- Unit 7: Woodland Management
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management
- Unit 12: Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 7: Woodland Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to manage woodland environments, from initial structure and condition surveys to undertaking practical tasks to manage biodiversity.

Unit introduction

Well-managed woodlands, with a variety of structural features, contribute greatly to the biodiversity of the UK. Several key indicator species, such as the silver-washed fritillary butterfly, dormouse and pied flycatcher, depend on properly managed woodlands for their survival. In commercial forestry management (silviculture), efficient timber production takes priority, but the environment also provides key habitats for specialist species. People also enjoy using woodlands as places for informal recreation. Managing woodlands correctly to meet these diverse demands has become an issue of renewed importance for countryside workers.

In this unit, you will focus on the management of UK woodlands, investigating elements of the woodland ecosystem. You will learn to recognise and survey key features of woodland habitats and suggest woodland management techniques to ensure a diversity of habitats. You will develop practical woodland habitat management skills to help meet the aims of management planning.

Completion of this unit will help you prepare for employment in a number of roles such as an education officer or assistant woodland officer. You could also progress to the role of an advanced apprentice, or following further study, to higher education courses such as Forestry (BSc) or Ecology and Wildlife Conservation (BSc).

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand woodland types and habitats to manage biodiversity
- B** Understand the structure and condition of a woodland environment to plan its management
- C** Undertake practical woodland management to enhance the woodland environment.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand woodland types and habitats to manage biodiversity	A1 Natural and planted UK woodlands A2 Woodland biodiversity A3 Woodland habitats and their management	A report exploring management methods used to enhance biodiversity for two different types of woodland.
B Understand the structure and condition of a woodland environment to plan its management	B1 Woodland structure and features B2 Woodland condition and ecology	Portfolio of evidence, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • structural and ecological woodland surveys • brief woodland management plan • evidence of practical woodland management tasks • a report on the effect of practical management tasks on biodiversity.
C Undertake practical woodland management to enhance the woodland environment	C1 Managing woodland habitats safely C2 Managing habitats for wildlife conservation	

Content

Learning aim A: Understand woodland types and habitats to manage biodiversity

A1 Natural and planted UK woodlands

The history and purpose of natural and planted UK woodlands.

- Historical overview:
 - initial special colonising following Ice Age
 - human impact on woodland cover, to include the first gatherers, Mesolithic man, the first farmers, Neolithic man, Bronze Age, Iron Age, Domesday Book, 20th-century industrialisation and agriculture
 - the role of the Forestry Commission.
- Silviculture woodland:
 - structure and features, e.g. clear-fell, planting arrangement
 - current Forestry Commission policies and species trials
 - key conifer species and their end use
 - impacts of conifers on the landscape.
- Grazed woodland:
 - structure and features, e.g. livestock use, pollarding
 - protection of trees from browsing through pollarding.
- Coppiced woodland:
 - structure and features, e.g. standards, coppice stalls
 - aims of pure coppice stands, e.g. hazel, sweet chestnut, willow.
- Ancient woodland:
 - structure and features, e.g. ancient trees, wood banks.

A2 Woodland biodiversity

The ecology of common national and regional species of flora and fauna.

- National species:
 - trees and shrubs, e.g. oak, ash, birch, hazel, hawthorn
 - flowers, e.g. bluebell, wood anemone, dog's mercury, lesser celandine, honeysuckle
 - woodland birds, e.g. chiffchaff, great spotted woodpecker, nuthatch, goldcrest, tawny owl
 - mammals, e.g. common shrew, wood mouse, stoat, muntjac deer, pipistrelle bat
 - invertebrates, e.g. speckled wood, lesser stag beetle, wood ants, wasps.
- Regional species:
 - trees and shrubs, e.g. lime, Sitka spruce, juniper
 - woodland birds, e.g. pied flycatcher, capercaillie, jay
 - mammals, e.g. red squirrel, Scottish wild cat, polecat
 - invertebrates, e.g. chequered skipper, purple hairstreak, stag beetle
 - locally important species, e.g. flowers, fungi, bryophytes, mosses, rushes, sedges, grasses
 - protected species and the laws pertaining to them, e.g. dormice, great crested newt, bats.

A3 Woodland habitats and their management

Habitat types and management methods.

- Glades – mowing, strimming, scrub removal.
- Rides – scalloping, retention of pinch points, mowing.
- Dead wood, standing, fallen and hanging – making safe, non-intervention.
- Hedges – cutting, laying, planting.
- Streams and ponds – clearing and reducing vegetation, creating hibernacula.
- Coppice compartment:
 - length and sequence of a coppice rotation
 - selection of standards, their density and distribution
 - consideration of the height of cut.
- Standard trees – pollarding.
- Impacts of management on biotic and abiotic conditions.

Learning aim B: Understand the structure and condition of a woodland environment to plan its management

B1 Woodland structure and features

- Characteristics of the vertical structure, including the ground, herbaceous, shrub and tree layers:
 - species within each layer
 - class of tree using the DAFOR (dominant, abundant, frequent, occasional, rare) scale
 - British National Vegetation Classification (NVC).
- Characteristics of the horizontal structure, including ponds, streams, ditches, glades, rides, woodland margins, dead wood, cord wood, boundaries, e.g. walls, wood banks, hedgerows and veteran trees.
- Features, including war trenches, water pumping stations, old railway lines, forts, pits, tumuli, ancient trackways, earthworks, barrows, saw pits, charcoal platforms.
- Research sources for obtaining historic, land-use data, e.g. historic maps, records office, archaeological societies.

B2 Woodland condition and ecology

Assessing the condition of woodland biodiversity.

- Signs of pests and diseases:
 - common pests, including deer, squirrel, rabbit, caterpillar, beetles
 - regional pests, e.g. boar, beaver
 - common diseases, including Dutch elm disease, chestnut leaf miner, acute oak decline, ash dieback, *Phytophthora ramorum*
 - signs of pests, including ring barking, browse line, bore holes, tracks
 - signs of diseases, including crown dieback, leaf discolouration, defoliation, canker.
- Impact of pests and disease on woodland environment, including habitat loss, clearfell, reduction in economic value.
- Ecological surveys:
 - selection and use of equipment for surveying species of flora or fauna, to include quadrats, transects, measuring tapes, nets, light meters, thermometers, pitfall traps, Longworth traps, movement sensor camera, clinometers, recording sheets.
- Surveying process:
 - diversity and abundance, setting out equipment, seasonal considerations, timing of survey, legal considerations
 - interpretation of data using frequency, e.g. mean, median, mode
 - presentation of data, including tables and graphs.

Learning aim C: Undertake practical woodland management to enhance the woodland environment

C1 Managing woodland habitats safely

- Health and safety procedures when working in woodland habitats, to include:
 - personal protective equipment (PPE)
 - preparation and use of risk assessment; risks, e.g. to learners, public
 - correct selection of tools and equipment for undertaking tasks
 - safe transport, carrying and use of tools and equipment
 - safe working procedures to ensure protection of self and others.
- Correct maintenance of tools and equipment, including cleaning and storage.
- Practical management techniques, including coppicing, pruning, thinning, cutting or mowing.
- Protection of coppiced stools from browsing animals.
- Removal of cut material or use as dead hedging, wildlife habitats.

C2 Managing habitats for wildlife conservation

Impact of practical management on woodland habitats.

- Recognition of the positive effect of woodland habitat management work on biodiversity.
- Methods to minimise potentially harmful effects of habitat management on sensitive features by careful management of waste.
- Awareness of woodland ecology to manage the timing of management works.
- Identification of species being managed.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand woodland types and habitats to manage biodiversity		A.D1 Evaluate the effectiveness of woodland management strategies to enhance biodiversity.
A.P1 Explain the relationship between woodland type and biodiversity. A.P2 Discuss how habitat management methods enhance biodiversity.	A.M1 Analyse the habitat management methods used to enhance biodiversity in woodlands.	
Learning aim B: Understand the structure and condition of a woodland environment to plan its management		B.D2 Produce an industry-standard woodland management plan based on own survey and secondary research. C.D3 Evaluate the ecological impact of own practical woodland management tasks.
B.P3 Perform competent woodland structure and ecological surveys. B.P4 Produce a basic woodland management plan based on own survey and secondary research.	B.M2 Perform comprehensive woodland structure and ecological surveys. B.M3 Demonstrate efficient management of woodland habitats.	
Learning aim C: Undertake practical woodland management to enhance the woodland environment		
C.P5 Perform safe management of woodland habitats. C.P6 Explain contribution of woodland management tasks in enhancing biodiversity.	C.M4 Demonstrate efficient management of woodland habitats. C.M5 Assess anticipated impact of management tasks on woodland ecology.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, B.M3, C.M4, C.M5, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to a range of:

- commonly used hand tools
- woodlands to visit, with differing species, structures and purpose
- woodland habitats to carry out practical management tasks.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will use the case studies of two different types of woodland to provide a thorough, detailed and accurate account of the differences between woodland types and habitat characteristics. They will draw on a depth of knowledge and synthesis of understanding from across the learning aims to provide clear and logical reasoning as to the consequent ecology of the woodlands.

Using the case studies, learners will provide a detailed discussion of the objectives of planned habitat management, and a clearly reasoned account of how it affects biotic and abiotic conditions, and its impact on the woodland ecology. Their account will include a comprehensive case study, reviewing the success or failure of the management strategy, to positively affect a target species. They will show evidence of their full appreciation of the interrelationship between the target species and other named species and their environment. Detailed statistical evidence will be presented and accurately interpreted.

For merit standard, learners will use case studies of two different types of woodland to demonstrate their understanding of the interrelationship between woodland types and habitat characteristics, and the range of flora and fauna species found in each.

In considering habitat management in the two woodlands, learners will provide detailed information of the methods selected and their intended outcomes. They will show a clear understanding of the relationship between these methods and the impact on biotic and abiotic conditions. Learners will clearly demonstrate an understanding of the complexity of the relationship between management methods undertaken, and the response of the target species and other species found in the woodlands. Statistical evidence will be presented and there will be some interpretation of the figures.

For pass standard, learners will use case studies to provide details of two different types of woodland from the unit content, referring to superficial differences between woodland types, and listing key flora and fauna species found in each. Learners will demonstrate an understanding of the link between each woodland type and habitat characteristics, and the wildlife identified within it.

Learners will consider how appropriate woodland management methods can be used to improve the habitat for wildlife. They will outline the chief objectives of a planned habitat management strategy, providing information on the processes and methods used. They will demonstrate some understanding of the relationship between management undertaken and the response of target species. Learners will show a basic knowledge of the connection between the management of the target species and the impact on other species found in the woodlands.

Learners will present a simple data table to support their discussions.

Learning aims B and C

For distinction standard, learners will carry out proficient visual surveys, identifying the full range of structures and features. Valid conclusions as to the presence or absence of pests and diseases will be clearly based on available evidence. Learners will engage fully in ecological surveys, providing full and accurate findings.

Learners will produce a systematically considered management plan of at least seven objectives, with at least two specific activities for each objective. The given timescale to meet the objectives will evidence robust consideration of the timeframes required. Meticulous secondary research will be evidenced, including copies of historical maps, and recorded evidence of historical land use.

Learners will actively promote safety throughout woodland management tasks, ensuring the safety of themselves and others, anticipating dangers and acting accordingly. They will prepare and operate tools and equipment safely and to industry standard. Woodland management tasks will be conducted thoroughly throughout, with meticulous attention to detail and according to instructions given in the task brief.

In their report, learners will clearly demonstrate an understanding of the complex links between the tasks undertaken and the impact on woodland ecology, providing examples of the abiotic and biotic consequences, such as changes in temperature, humidity and light, and the impact on wildlife.

For merit standard, learners will complete accurate and detailed visual surveys, identifying a broad range of structures and features. Evidence of the presence or absence of pests and diseases will be carefully considered. Learners will actively carry out ecological surveys, providing a detailed record of findings.

In their management plan, learners will produce at least five objectives, with at least two specific activities for each objective. The given timescale to meet the objectives will be logical and realistic. Detailed secondary research will be evidenced, such as the inclusion of copies of historical maps, or recorded evidence of historical land use.

Learners will work safely and show an awareness of potential dangers to themselves and others. They will prepare and use required tools and equipment safely and competently. Woodland management tasks will be undertaken in a time-efficient manner, with clear reference to the brief.

In their report, learners will make some connections between the tasks undertaken and the potential impacts on the woodland ecology.

For pass standard, learners will complete visual surveys mostly accurately, identifying limited structures, features, and indicating the presence or absence of major pests and diseases. Learners will carry out ecological surveys using correct equipment and methods, as indicated in the unit content, and presenting limited data.

In their management plan, learners will produce at least three objectives, with at least one general activity for each objective. The given timescale to meet the objectives will be realistic. Some secondary research will be evidenced, such as the inclusion of copies of historical maps.

Learners will carry out woodland management tasks safely, which will include assessing the site for trip hazards and other dangers such as overhanging dead wood, or the presence of broken glass or other rubbish. Learners will use appropriate PPE, such as gloves or suitable footwear. They will carry and use required tools and equipment safely and appropriately, ensuring that other personnel are not in danger from their activities, such as colleagues in line with falling trees. Learners will complete tasks in line with the brief given to them by the teacher, ranger or other supervisor. Woodland management may include tasks such as coppicing, pruning, cutting or other activities given in the unit content. On completion of the task, learners will safely remove and store tools and equipment, and dispose of waste materials appropriately.

Learners will provide limited understanding of the link between the tasks undertaken and the impact on biodiversity.

Links to other units

This unit links to *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 8: Identification, Planting and Care of Trees

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to plant trees and provide their aftercare, and the knowledge to identify trees using botanical nomenclature.

Unit introduction

Trees are one of the most amazing and diverse range of plants on the Earth, thriving in both urban and rural locations. Tree planting occurs for many reasons, including the management of native woodland, the shaping of the landscape, the production of edible fruit, or simply as ornamental, stand-alone specimens. Being able to correctly identify trees is essential for anyone working in the land-based sector, especially when selecting appropriate trees for planting.

In this unit, you will learn the correct botanical nomenclature and terminology used when identifying trees, as well as the individual characteristics that aid their identification. You will research a range of different trees suitable for a given area and select appropriate trees for planting, using your knowledge of their individual requirements. You will complete practical tasks in planting your chosen trees and providing aftercare so that they establish successfully. Understanding tree requirements and providing suitable surroundings and continued aftercare will mean that your trees will flourish and form a significant feature of the landscape for many years to come.

This unit will give you the skills to identify, plant and care for trees. These skills are a huge advantage for progression to employment in roles such as a greenkeeper, gardener in the grounds of a stately home, or an expert who recommends and sells plants in a garden centre. Alternatively, you may wish to continue your study to higher education, for example countryside management degrees.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand botanical nomenclature and terminology for the purpose of tree identification
- B** Explore factors affecting selection of trees and their suitability for use in a given area
- C** Undertake planting and aftercare of trees in a given area.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand botanical nomenclature and terminology for the purpose of tree identification	A1 Terminology used in tree nomenclature A2 Categorisation of trees A3 Characteristics of trees for identification	A written report on the biological nomenclature and tree characteristics that are used to identify trees, including their effectiveness.
B Explore factors affecting selection of trees and their suitability for use in a given area	B1 Considerations affecting the choice of trees for specific areas B2 Factors affecting the suitability of trees	Research notes on the factors that affect the selection and suitability of trees for planting, using findings to select trees to plant in a given area.
C Undertake planting and aftercare of trees in a given area	C1 Preparation for planting C2 Planting methods C3 Providing aftercare	A portfolio of evidence showing how trees are selected, planting activities and aftercare to ensure trees establish successfully.

Content

Learning aim A: Understand botanical nomenclature and terminology for the purpose of tree identification

Naming conventions and taxonomic categories used to identify trees based on their features, and the importance of using the correct terminology.

A1 Terminology used in tree nomenclature

- Plant classification order for trees:
 - kingdom
 - phyla, including gymnosperms and angiosperms
 - class, including monocotyledons and dicotyledons
 - family
 - genus
 - species
 - sub-species, variety, form, cultivar, hybrid.
- Importance of botanical names:
 - problems that occur using common plant names, including using the native tongue, regional differences, multiple common names for the same genus
 - binominal system for plant naming.
- Correct format for writing plant names:
 - correct use of capital letters, lower case letters, single quotation marks
 - correct use of symbols and abbreviations
 - correct use of descriptive names to aid identification, e.g. pendula, alba, macrophyllum.

A2 Categorisation of trees

Definition, categorisation and identification of trees from native and non-native species:

- broad-leaved trees
- ornamental trees
- evergreen trees
- conifers.

A3 Characteristics of trees for identification

Methods used to identify trees using tree features and characteristics.

- Morphological features and characteristics used in the identification of trees:
 - foliage, including bark, branch, twig, lenticels, node, internode
 - leaf arrangements, including alternate, opposite and whorled, leaf bud, petiolated and sessile
 - venation, including reticulated and parallel, simple and compound
 - leaf types, including cordate, ovate, lanceolate, linear, oblong, palmate, pinnate, trifoliate, lobed, needles, scales
 - leaf colour
 - flowers, including bud, petals, bract, singular, grouped, shape, colour, arrangement
 - succulent fruits, including berries, fruits, drupes
 - dried fruits, including nuts and seeds
 - seasonal features, including stems, foliage, flowers, seeds, fruits.

- Identification methods and tools:
 - tactile features, including smooth, soft, spiked, rough, spongy
 - smell, including fragrant flowers, foliage, sap
 - visual observations, including growth habit, height, spread
 - form, including oval, columnar, rounded, pyramidal, weeping, irregular, vase
 - illustrated textbooks, nursery catalogues, brochures and labels
 - technology, including smartphone apps
 - identification keys, including flow chart, dichotomous key.
- Sources of information and standards for classification, e.g. Forestry Commission, Royal Horticultural Society, the Woodland Trust.

Learning aim B: Explore factors affecting selection of trees and their suitability for use in a given area

Considerations affecting the selection of trees for planting in specific areas.

B1 Considerations affecting the choice of trees for specific areas

Plant requirements:

- preferred soil type, including clay, sand, silt, loam, pH
- nutrient requirements, including primary/macronutrients, secondary nutrients and trace elements for growth, rigour, establishment, flowering and fruiting
- aspect, including light and shade tolerance, space available, frost and sun pockets, protection, topography, air quality
- support needs, including stakes, canes, guards, guys, anchors, ties
- planting stock type, including bare root, root balled, containerised
- specific requirements, including protection and support type for individual trees, including *Quercus*, *Fraxinus*, *Betula*, *Malus*, *Prunus*, *Salix*, *Juglans* and *Fagus*; and for sizes of plant, including seedlings, whip, feathered whip, bush, standard, half-standard, budded/grafted, including maiden, feathered maiden.

B2 Factors affecting the suitability of trees

- Tree growth and habit:
 - size of tree at planting, growth speed, root spread, size, shape and appropriateness of tree for given purpose, including pyramidal, conical, columnar, spreading, rounded, vase shaped, broad.
- Surroundings that affect tree selection:
 - environmental factors, including buildings and structures, overhead and underground services, traffic, highways, climate and microclimate, exposure, drainage, uneven ground, preferred habitat, space
 - public access areas, footpaths, rights of way, potential issues of falling leaves, fruit, overhanging branches, maintenance access
 - aesthetic value, grouping and combinations, arboricultural merit, silvicultural merit
 - soil structure, texture, pH, drainage, nutrient value, depth, including impact on anchorage and support systems.

Learning aim C: Undertake planting and aftercare of trees in a given area

Consideration when preparing to plant, planting and providing aftercare of trees.

C1 Preparation for planting

- Assessing risk and working safely:
 - identification of hazards and risks around the work area (related to tools, equipment, people) and how these can be minimised, including essential personal protective equipment (PPE)
 - legislation, including Environmental Protection Act 1990, Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981, Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974, Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002
 - methods for working safely and minimising damage to working areas.
- Use and application of correct tools, materials and equipment to prepare ground for planting:
 - tools, including spade, rake, hoe, trowel, wheelbarrow
 - materials, including stakes, ties, guards, soil conditioners, organic matter, fertiliser base dressing
 - machinery, including cultivator, rotavator, excavator.
- Ground preparation:
 - cultivation by hand or machine, including correct depth, consolidation, level, addition of soil conditioners, ameliorants, fertilisers, anti-desiccants, as appropriate to area
 - removal of debris, weeds, organic and inorganic waste before planting and correct disposal.

C2 Planting methods

Activities undertaken to ensure optimum condition for planting and successful establishment.

- Use and application of correct tools and equipment for planting:
 - tools, including spades, e.g. Schlick, Mansfield, rake, hoe, trowel, secateurs, loppers, wheelbarrow
 - machinery, including hydraulic tree spades, rotary planters, augers.
- Tree preparation, including watering, removal of dead foliage and weeds, pruning.
- Planting:
 - safe working practices to minimise damage to working area and self
 - reviewing ground preparation
 - handling of trees to avoid damage
 - backfilling
 - safe disposal of waste, including organic and inorganic
 - safe removal of tools and equipment.

C3 Providing aftercare

Methods, equipment and materials used for successful establishment and growth.

- Tree protection, including support, e.g. stakes, guys, anchors and guards for protection from animals, people and weather.
- Initial aftercare to ensure successful establishment, including feeding, watering, pruning, mulching with organic and inorganic materials, disposal of waste, including organic and inorganic.
- Continued aftercare, including inspection, nutrition, watering, formative pruning, moisture retention, mulching, adjustment and removal of support, use of pesticides and herbicides.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand botanical nomenclature and terminology for the purpose of tree identification		
<p>A.P1 Explain the botanical nomenclature and terminology used to identify trees.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain plant classification and different characteristics that aid identification.</p>	<p>A.M1 Assess how botanical nomenclature and characteristics aid tree identification.</p>	
Learning aim B: Explore factors affecting selection of trees and their suitability for use in a given area		
<p>B.P3 Explain the factors that affect the selection of trees in a given area.</p> <p>B.P4 Explain own selection of trees for a given area.</p>	<p>B.M2 Analyse factors for own selection of trees for a given area.</p>	
Learning aim C: Undertake planting and aftercare of trees in a given area		
<p>C.P5 Demonstrate safe working practices when carrying out ground preparation, planting and aftercare to establish new trees.</p> <p>C.P6 Explain methods used to carry out planting and aftercare of trees.</p>	<p>C.M3 Demonstrate efficient working practices when preparing, planting and providing aftercare to establish new trees.</p> <p>C.M4 Analyse the impact of own methods used to carry out planting and aftercare.</p>	
		<p>A.D1 Evaluate the effectiveness of botanical nomenclature and characteristics in aiding tree identification.</p> <p>B.D2 Evaluate own selection of trees based on factors that affect selection and suitability for a given area.</p> <p>C.D3 Evaluate methods used to carry out planting and aftercare, with recommendations for future improvements.</p>

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of trees to study, from young whips to mature trees
- an area to plant and establish new trees
- appropriate, well-maintained tools, equipment and materials for preparing ground, planting and providing aftercare to trees
- suitable PPE.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will provide a thorough and detailed account of the effectiveness of biological nomenclature and physical plant characteristics when identifying trees. They will show depth of understanding by making detailed links between their use and tree identification, using well-selected, accurate examples of how this leads to positive identification. Learners will provide detailed reasoning as to the limitations of using descriptive biological nomenclature and characteristics to identify trees, using well-selected examples of negative identification.

Learners will consider identification methods and tools thoroughly, recommending those that lead to positive identification.

For merit standard, learners will examine the effectiveness of biological nomenclature and characteristics when identifying trees. They will demonstrate their understanding by making clear links between their use and tree identification, using appropriate examples of how this leads to positive identification. Learners will demonstrate awareness of the limitations of these methods to identify trees and support this through the use of examples and an explanation of some of the issues.

Learners will provide a clear understanding of identification methods and tools, and provide clear reasoning as to the link between the methods and positive identification.

For pass standard, learners will demonstrate clear understanding of the approach used in botanical nomenclature and the methods used to obtain a positive identification of trees using physical characteristics. Learners will demonstrate some awareness that there are limitations to their use.

Learners will provide details of a number of identification methods and tools, and the main reasons they may be selected for use.

Learning aims B and C

The assessment requires a given area to carry out the selection, preparation, planting and aftercare of trees.

For distinction standard, learners will demonstrate clear and detailed reasoning for their tree selection through a thorough examination of the given planting area, considering all relevant aspects that may affect successful tree establishment. This will include full details on the tree requirements for successful growth, meticulously linked to the site conditions. Learners will consider their choices carefully and fully justify their selection in relation to factors affecting suitability.

Learners will carry out planting and aftercare that is effective in supporting the successful establishment of their chosen trees. Learners will evidence clear ways to minimise risks and fully demonstrate competent safe working practices throughout. They will select correct tools, materials and equipment, using them safely and to industry standard. They will draw on knowledge from their learning to reflect on the decisions they made when planting and undertaking practical tasks. Efficient care to the tree will be provided throughout the planting and aftercare processes.

Learners will show a comprehensive understanding of tree requirements before planting, during planting and when providing aftercare to support the successful establishment of trees. Learners will review the methods they used for planting and aftercare to thoroughly explore where they were successful and where methods could be improved or carried out differently.

For merit standard, learners will provide evidence that they have researched different trees and tree types to select trees for planting that clearly match the site conditions and the likelihood of successful establishment. Learners will review their selection of trees, presenting well-documented evidence and making reasoned recommendations for their selection, providing clear links between the features of the given planting site and the selected trees.

Learners will carry out planting, showing they have optimised the given area through the preparation of the site and trees, planting with skill, and by demonstrating efficiency in the time taken, the resources used and the minimal disruption to the trees during the planting process. Learners will draw on their knowledge to consider ground conditions and prepare the area appropriately. They will assess the hazards and risks involved in carrying out the practical tasks and use the required tools, materials and equipment safely and competently.

Learners will show detailed knowledge of individual tree requirements in order to provide aftercare that helps to support successful establishment, for example providing tree stakes, ties and protection that match the age of the tree planted.

Learners will reflect on the methods they used and make clear connections to their impact on the successful establishment of trees.

For pass standard, learners will provide details of the features and characteristics of a given area and research a range of suitable trees for the area, demonstrating an understanding of different tree types, requirements and any limiting factors of the area to be planted. Learners will select a range of trees from those researched, making links between site characteristics and tree requirements.

Learners will work safely, with an awareness of the risks and potential issues arising when preparing the ground for planting trees, during the planting process, and when providing aftercare. Learners will use appropriate methods, tools and equipment to prepare and plant their selected trees, leaving the area clean and tidy on completion. Learners will provide basic aftercare for trees, which may include tree guards or support. On completion of the tasks, learners will safely remove and store tools, materials and equipment, disposing of waste materials appropriately.

Learners will provide reasons for their selected methods for tree planting and aftercare, demonstrating some understanding of the impact these methods have on the successful establishment of trees.

Links to other units

This unit links to *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 9: Developing a Land-based Enterprise

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to prepare a business plan for a viable land-based enterprise, based on their own market research and financial feasibility study.

Unit introduction

Understanding the operation of any business is vital if it is to be successful. Employees need to have knowledge of the business environment and marketplace as well as good business management skills. The land-based sector is predominately made up of small and medium-sized businesses, and this provides many opportunities to set up your own business.

In this unit, you will learn about the features and resources, including human, physical and financial, and the processes that businesses operating in the land-based sector need. You will undertake a financial viability study, preparing cash flows, an income statement and a statement of financial position. You will undertake market research to identify a viable enterprise, leading to the production and presentation of a viable business start-up plan for a chosen land-based enterprise.

These activities will prepare you for employment in the land-based sector in roles such as unit manager, or for self-employment in the sector. This unit will also enable you to progress to higher education courses such as a degree in land-based business management or relevant vocational degrees such as horticulture or countryside management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Examine the features, resource requirements and processes of businesses operating in the land-based sector
- B** Carry out market research to identify a financially viable land-based enterprise
- C** Develop a business start-up plan for a viable land-based enterprise.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Examine the features, resource requirements and processes of businesses operating in the land-based sector	A1 Features of land-based businesses A2 Resource requirements of land-based businesses A3 Land-based business processes and procedures	A report that investigates the key features, resource requirements and processes of a profit and a not-for-profit business operating in the land-based sector.
B Carry out market research to identify a financially viable land-based enterprise	B1 Market research and analysis B2 Financial feasibility of a land-based enterprise	A business start-up plan for a chosen enterprise for presentation to potential stakeholders, supported by market research and a financial viability analysis.
C Develop a business start-up plan for a viable land-based enterprise	C1 Features of a business start-up plan C2 Presenting and evaluating the business plan	

Content

Learning aim A: Examine the features, resource requirements and processes of businesses operating in the land-based sector

A1 Features of land-based businesses

- Ownership and liability, to include sole trader, partnership, private and public limited company, franchises, public sector businesses, not-for-profit.
- Objectives associated with business type, e.g. supply of products or services, not-for-profit, profit making.
- Scope of business activities, to include local, national, international.
- Link between land-based and associated industries in the supply chain, e.g. production and manufacturing, leisure.
- Reasons for success and how they differ depending on ability to meet demand, use of technology, type of business, innovative products or systems.
- Importance of land-based industries to regional and local economies, including social and environmental impact, e.g. bringing employment, gross domestic product (GDP), changes in biodiversity, sustainability.

A2 Resource requirements of land-based businesses

- Physical resources, to include land, machinery, equipment, materials.
- Human resources, including skills and knowledge requirements, staff, structure.
- Financial resources, including internal (retained profit) and external sources (loans, hire purchase, grants).
- Educational resources, such as professional trade associations and trade bodies, government organisations, e.g. Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra), research organisations.

A3 Land-based business processes and procedures

Importance, legal aspects and management efficiency.

- Sourcing materials and services, e.g. timing, purchasing, ordering procedures, credit control, record keeping.
- Planning the production of products or services, e.g. forecasting supply and demand, methods of production (job, batch, lean, flow).
- Sales and marketing, e.g. pricing strategies, costs, internal and external communication, promotional activities (direct marketing, advertising).
- Legislative recording requirements, e.g. health and safety, Control of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSHH) Regulations 2002, food safety, plant and animal passports.
- Details and purpose of relevant registration schemes, e.g. Red Tractor Assurance, quality management schemes, land registry, Registration of Land-based Operatives (ROLO), Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).
- Monitoring business operations to improve performance, e.g. gross margin, production levels, financial efficiency, against targets, advantages, disadvantages.

Learning aim B: Carry out market research to identify a financially viable land-based enterprise

B1 Market research and analysis

Understanding the marketplace, customers and competitors.

- Target market, e.g. types of customer, age, location.
- Primary and secondary research, e.g. questionnaires, surveys, interviews.
- Analysis of the business environment, including Porter's five forces, PESTLE (political, economic, social, technological, legal, environmental) and SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats).
- Competitor analysis, to include indirect and direct competitors, local, national, international, market share, reputation, pricing, customers.
- Barriers to setting up, e.g. viability, cash flow, finance, legislation, resources.

B2 Financial feasibility of a land-based enterprise

Financial feasibility study – assessment of financial aspects of starting up an enterprise.

- Amount of finance needed, including set-up costs, fixed and variable costs.
- Sources of capital, e.g. investors, own, grants, loans.
- Calculation of break-even forecast and margin of safety.
- Calculation of return on capital employed, net profit margins, current ratio.
- Preparation of financial accounts, to include:
 - income statement
 - statements of financial position
 - cash flow forecasts.

Learning aim C: Develop a business start-up plan for a viable land-based enterprise

C1 Features of a business start-up plan

Key areas that need to be included in a business plan.

- Nature of the enterprise, e.g. sales, service.
- Business aims and objectives, e.g. profit, survival, growth, long and short term.
- Legal structure and operation.
- Resource requirements.
- Promotion, including methods and costs.
- Financial forecasts, including opening and closing statement of financial position, capital to show investment needed, cash flow forecast.
- Summary of market analysis and competition.
- Measures of success, e.g. financial and non-financial key performance indicators.
- Risks and contingency plans.

C2 Presenting and evaluating the business plan

- Documentation, to include financial forecasts, summary of business, business plan.
- Presentation of the business plan to potential investors, e.g. stakeholders, bank, formal, informal, face to face, via submission of documentation.
- Evaluating the business plan, e.g. appropriate method of presentation, clearly set out, feedback from the potential investor, sufficient preparation, level of detail included, coverage of key areas, enable potential investor or stakeholder to make decisions based on the information.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Examine the features, resource requirements and processes of businesses operating in the land-based sector		
A.P1 Explain the features and resource requirements of two contrasting businesses in the land-based sector. A.P2 Explain the business processes and procedures for two contrasting businesses in the land-based sector.	A.M1 Analyse the impact of business features, resource requirements, features and processes on the operation of two contrasting businesses in the land-based sector.	A.D1 Evaluate the impact of key business features, resource requirements and processes on the performance of two contrasting businesses in the land-based sector.
Learning aim B: Carry out market research to identify a financially viable land-based enterprise		
B.P3 Carry out market research to identify a land-based business enterprise. B.P4 Carry out a financial feasibility study for a land-based enterprise.	B.M2 Analyse the results of own market research and financial feasibility study to develop a business start-up plan for a chosen land-based enterprise.	B.D2 Evaluate own market research and financial feasibility study, drawing out valid conclusions to produce a comprehensive business start-up plan for a chosen land-based enterprise.
Learning aim C: Develop a business start-up plan for a viable land-based enterprise		
C.P5 Produce a basic business start-up plan for a chosen land-based enterprise, based on own research. C.P6 Explain the business start-up plan to relevant stakeholders.	C.M3 Produce a detailed business start-up plan for a chosen land-based enterprise, based on own research to present to relevant stakeholders.	C.D3 Evaluate own business start-up plan, justifying conclusions.

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- two business types, non-profit and profit, which will allow learners to gain information (one could be learners' work placement)
- business planning tools or information/support such as that provided by banks etc.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

The two business examples used must be in the land-based sector but could be from different industries in the sector, i.e. a charity in the animal sector and Dairy Crest in the agricultural sector.

For distinction standard, learners will show depth of understanding by evaluating how resource requirements, key business features, processes and procedures impact on the performance of two businesses operating in the land-based sector, with one being a for-profit business and the other a not-for-profit business. Learners will support their evaluation with well-chosen examples from their two businesses. They will review how decisions made in the supply chain impact on business performance and show, through their evaluation, the advantages and disadvantages of the processes and procedures used in the businesses, and how these processes impact on and improve business performance. Learners will justify their conclusions by linking the impact to key features, processes and procedures, and resource requirements, rather than just explaining these in general terms.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate their understanding of how resource requirements, key business features, processes and procedures affect the effectiveness of two businesses operating in the land-based sector, selecting some examples to support their understanding. They will review the links between different land-based businesses in the supply chain and their relationship to each other. Learners will make reasoned, analytical judgements in relation to a number of advantages and disadvantages of the different processes and procedures used in the businesses, and how these processes can improve business performance, for example the advantage of sourcing raw materials locally reduces transport costs and time to market, improving business costs and readiness of products.

For pass standard, learners will recall knowledge to explain the key business features, resource requirements, processes and procedures required to operate a for-profit and a not-for-profit business in the land-based sector. Learners will explain the importance of links between different land-based businesses in the supply chain and how these relate to each other. They will use relevant research to show the resource requirements and the importance of these in operating a business effectively, using specific examples. Learners will demonstrate an understanding of the processes and procedures used in the businesses, and how these relate to business performance, for example registration with a quality assurance scheme gives customers confidence in the product and the company they are buying from, resulting in return purchasing.

Learning aims B and C

Learners should prepare their own business plan. Presentation of the business plan can take the form of a formal presentation, an informal meeting or discussion or submission of the written documentation, as appropriate.

For distinction standard, learners will use concise and professional arguments when reviewing their own research and financial feasibility study, giving reasons for all elements. They will demonstrate clearly how their market research and financial feasibility study will underpin the development of a comprehensive business start-up plan and support this with carefully chosen examples, such as their financial forecasts to show the predicted success of the chosen business. Based on their evaluation, they will give clear and detailed reasons for their conclusions.

Learners will present their business start-up plan individually, demonstrating a high standard of technical ability, attention to detail, and use of the correct business terminology and communication style. They will evaluate this plan, taking into account feedback, their preparation, method of presentation and level of detail. They need to demonstrate their understanding by justifying any conclusions made within their evaluation and recommendations.

For merit standard, learners will make reasoned, analytical judgements about their financial feasibility study and market research and how they relate to the development of the business start-up plan, supporting this with examples. They will produce their business start-up plan based on their own research that includes the type of business, its aims and objectives, resource requirements, methods of promotion, risks and contingency plans and financial forecasts. Learners will individually present this plan in a professional way, demonstrating attention to detail, use of appropriate business terminology and preparation before the final presentation. There will be some analysis of the feedback from the potential investors or stakeholders.

For pass standard, learners will undertake some market research using primary and secondary research, supported by an analysis of the market and potential competitors in identifying a suitable business. They will also identify the potential sources of finance and costs, and prepare a cash flow forecast and income statement that relate to their business start-up, supporting these with examples. Learners will individually prepare a basic business start-up plan from their research, including the outline of the business, its aims and objectives, methods of promotion, a cash flow forecast, and profit and loss statement. They will present this plan, showing some knowledge and understanding of business terminology and answering questions from the potential investors or stakeholders.

Links to other units

This unit links to *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses from industry
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 10: Land-based Machinery Operations

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop skills in the safe operation of machines used in the land-based sectors, including carrying out pre-start checks, basic maintenance and repair, and actual operation.

Unit introduction

Machines are used throughout the land-based sectors for a range of purposes, including transport and powering or pulling other equipment. The correct selection, maintenance and use of machinery are extremely important to the success of all enterprises and sustainable working practices.

In this unit, you will explore machines relevant to your particular sector of the industry, developing practical skills and understanding of the different conditions in which machinery might need to operate. You will learn how to carry out pre-start checks and maintenance on these machines as well as the safe use and operation of the machine for a variety of tasks. The skills and knowledge gained in this unit will help you to manage the potential dangers involved in operating land-based machinery, and enable you to carry out tasks in a way that prioritises safety and consideration of environmental impact.

This unit will support your progression to employment in the land-based sectors in a role such as machinery operations assistant and assistant technician, or to further study in an apprenticeship or higher education.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate the types, purpose and safe operation of land-based machinery
- B** Operate land-based machinery safely to complete a practical task
- C** Maintain land-based machinery safely in order to sustain its effectiveness.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate the types, purpose and safe operation of land-based machinery	A1 Types of machine and their purpose A2 Principles of operation A3 Range of conditions in which machinery may be operated A4 Health and safety considerations	A report examining machinery types, their uses and operation for a relevant sector of the land-based industries.
B Operate land-based machinery safely to complete a practical task	B1 Preparation B2 Operation	Evidence of safe completion of practical tasks that include the preparation and operation of a suitable machine to achieve the task being carried out.
C Maintain land-based machinery safely in order to sustain its effectiveness	C1 Maintenance C2 Servicing and repair	Evidence of a machine being checked before and after use, and maintenance requirements being identified. A report evaluating the effectiveness of the preparation, routine maintenance and repair carried out, and the options available to do this.

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate the types, purpose and safe operation of land-based machinery

A1 Types of machine and their purpose

The types of machine available and the purposes for which they are used in the land-based sector.

- Types of machine:
 - tractors, including two- and four-wheel-drive systems, track-layers
 - utility vehicles
 - all-terrain vehicles (ATVs)
 - special purpose vehicles, e.g. self-propelled harvesters or mowers, material handlers
 - pedestrian-operated and hand-held machines.
- Adaptations for different purposes, including working on slopes, inside buildings and on soft or unfirm ground.
- Purposes of machines:
 - transport of goods and people
 - estate maintenance, e.g. brush cutters, hedge cutters, flails
 - pulling other equipment, e.g. trailers, mowers
 - powering attached equipment via external services, e.g. powered cultivators, mowers
 - excavation, e.g. trenching, ditching, landscaping
 - application of materials, e.g. seed, organic material, fertiliser and plant protection products.

A2 Principles of operation

- Available power sources:
 - engines, to include spark ignition, two- and four-stroke cycle, compression ignition, four-stroke and electric motors
 - fuels, to include petrol, diesel, liquid petroleum gas (LPG), biofuels and electricity, including single phase, three phase and battery
 - potential environmental impact of different engine types.
- Drive systems:
 - belts, chains and gearboxes:
 - their characteristics and use
 - advantages and disadvantages
 - hydrostatic systems:
 - their characteristics and use
 - advantages and disadvantages
 - two- and four-wheel-drive systems
 - different and equal-size wheels.
- Machine layout, design and safety features:
 - location of controls for powered machines, e.g. on/off switches, brakes, clutch, throttle/accelerator, gear lever, lights and indicators, operating sequences, emergency stop mechanisms
 - access, including doors, steps, protective covers and guards
 - aspects of sustainability relevant to machine design and layout, e.g. fuel type, fuel efficiency, emissions, noise pollution, and lubrication.
- Ancillary equipment:
 - hitches to attach trailed equipment, e.g. pick-up hitches, clevis drawbars
 - three-point linkage to attach mounted or semi-mounted equipment, e.g. ploughs, mowers and cultivators
 - external services, e.g. electrical, power take-off (PTO), shafts, hydraulics.

- Machine safety features and procedures:
 - safe operating procedures, e.g. starting the machine when it is out of gear, starting the machine with the operator in the driving position
 - safety features to prevent starting of the machine, e.g. out of gear, being on seat, depressed clutch
 - engine stop, e.g. key and fuel cut off
 - access, to include steps and guards
 - other safety features, e.g. anti-reverse for working pedestrian rotary tillers, safety cabs or frames, seat belts.

A3 Range of conditions in which machinery may be operated

- In the field or on site:
 - slopes
 - size of field/working area and topography
 - soil types and ground conditions
 - access.
- Weather and seasonality:
 - drought, wet, rain, snow, normal conditions
 - tasks in relation to time of year and seasons.

A4 Health and safety considerations

Health and safety aspects relevant to the use of machinery in land-based sectors.

- Legislation relevant to the use of land-based machinery:
 - regulations regarding the permission and competence required to carry out certain land-based operations, including:
 - minimum driver age limits
 - Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment Regulations (LOLER) and Provision and Use of Work Equipment Regulations (PUWER)
 - ‘on the road’ use of machinery
 - certificates of competence, e.g. spraying, material handling.
- Self-protection and protection of others:
 - Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974
 - personal protective equipment (PPE), e.g. safety boots, goggles, overalls, gloves
 - safe systems of work, use of manuals, safe use of controls and cut-outs
 - risk assessments
 - manual handling techniques.
- Potential consequences of not complying with health and safety requirements, such as:
 - injury to self and others
 - prosecution
 - invalidating insurance
 - ineffective and inefficient machines.

Learning aim B: Operate land-based machinery safely to complete a practical task

B1 Preparation

Preparing and checking machines before use and operation.

- Daily checks, adjustment, attachments, lubrication.
- Resources, to include consumables:
 - lubricants
 - cleaning agents, rags and towels
 - variety of tools
 - benches or workshop area.

- Use of PPE.
- Setting up of machine, e.g. position, mixed or draft control, guarding, setting maximum height or depth, working height or depth.

B2 Operation

Operation of relevant machinery in a field or site location.

- Pre-start checks, to include oil, fuel, water, ancillary fittings, tyres, visual checks, lights – where applicable.
- Attachment of equipment, e.g. trailer, link box, mower, spreader or cultivation equipment.
- In-field use, to include starting and stopping, work method, control of attached equipment, forward speed.
- Safe working procedures, e.g. knowledge of operator manual, safe mounting of and dismounting from machine, stopping machine to carry out adjustments and in-field maintenance.
- Aspects of sustainability relevant to machinery operation, e.g. use of energy-saving mode, correct gear and engine speed selection.

Learning aim C: Maintain land-based machinery safely in order to sustain its effectiveness

C1 Maintenance

Carrying out routine operator maintenance.

- Use of operator manuals.
- Understanding service intervals.
- Adjustments of drive devices, e.g. tension chains or belts.
- Checking of tyre pressures.
- Checking of liquids, e.g. fuel, coolant and oil levels, battery electrolyte level.
- Checking of guards for overall fitness for purpose and security of fittings.
- Checking of air filters.

C2 Servicing and repair

- Available options for carrying out servicing and repairs:
 - dealership services
 - in-house servicing and repairs by own mechanic
 - repairs in non-dealership workshop.
- Advantages and disadvantages of the different options for carrying out servicing and repairs, e.g. availability, time, warranty and cost.
- Understanding warranties, their advantages and disadvantages.
- Cost-effectiveness of servicing and repair, routine maintenance and maintenance intervals.
- Identifying faults and problems that require servicing and repair:
 - wear and tear, e.g. worn transmission and steering components, tyres, cutting blades, tines, knives, spark plugs, injectors, blocked filters
 - use of manufacturer part numbers and machine identification
 - health and safety issues, including loose, worn and missing guards.
- Carrying out simple servicing and repair:
 - use of operator's manual
 - renew oils
 - clean or renew filters
 - adjustments, e.g. tensions, pressures
 - maintain and update records of work
 - relevant repairs, e.g. replacement of belts, tines, blades, battery replacement, spark plug or injector replacement, guard replacement
 - recycling or disposing of waste materials and parts in line with accepted practice, e.g. recycling of waste oil, recycling of tyres, use of exchange parts and return.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate the types, purpose and safe operation of land-based machinery		A.D1 Justify the selection of different types of land-based machinery for a given land-based task.
<p>A.P1 Explain the purpose and operation of different types of land-based machine.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain the health and safety requirements in the operation of land-based machinery.</p>	<p>A.M1 Compare the principles of operation of different types of selected land-based machine.</p> <p>A.M2 Analyse the importance of health and safety requirements in the operation of land-based machinery.</p>	
Learning aim B: Operate land-based machinery safely to complete a practical task		B.D2 Evaluate own operation of land-based machinery against given objectives.
<p>B.P3 Safely prepare selected land-based machinery for work.</p> <p>B.P4 Safely operate simple land-based machinery to meet given objectives.</p>	B.M3 Efficiently use complex land-based machinery to meet given objectives.	
Learning aim C: Maintain land-based machinery safely in order to sustain its effectiveness		C.D3 Evaluate the effectiveness of techniques used to carry out routine maintenance and repair, and the options available to do this.
<p>C.P5 Explain the options available for the servicing and repair of land-based machinery.</p> <p>C.P6 Safely carry out routine operator maintenance and appropriate repairs for a chosen land-based machine.</p>	<p>C.M4 Assess potential faults on a given land-based machine, using manufacturer's data to specify replacement items during servicing and repair.</p> <p>C.M5 Carry out efficient routine operator maintenance and appropriate repairs for a chosen land-based machine.</p>	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of three summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.M2, A.D1)

Learning aim: B (B.P3, B.P4, B.M3, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M4, C.M5, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of common and specialist hand tools, including power tools and testing equipment
- suitable PPE
- a range of prime movers, including tractors and ride-on mowers and transporters
- a range of compatible attachments, including trailers and three-point linkage mounted equipment
- a flat, level site on which to operate
- basic workshop facilities, including vices, benches, fuels and lubricants.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will thoroughly investigate the machines available to a relevant sector of the land-based industry and fully justify the selection of two different types of machine for given tasks in a way that is logical, coherent and considers all relevant factors. The task will require the selection of some form of ride-on prime mover such as a tractor, haulage/transport vehicle or ride-on machine such as a mower. Evidence will display the accurate use of relevant terminology throughout to support a considered, well-reasoned response. Learners will make insightful references to the role of health and safety in the selection of different types of machines. Learners will meticulously investigate the problems associated with different conditions of use, produce robust, convincing solutions to these problems and make comprehensive, accurate references to relevant aspects of health and safety and sustainability.

For merit standard, learners will provide a clear, balanced review of the principles of operation of land-based machines and report on the principles of operation of two different machines for given tasks in the land-based sector. The task will require the selection of some form of ride-on prime mover such as a tractor, haulage/transport vehicle or ride-on machine such as a mower. The evidence provided will be technically accurate and compare clearly the principles of operation of the two machines. The solutions given by learners will be efficient and suitable. Clear and relevant consideration will be given to aspects of health and safety and sustainability. Learners' evidence will show relevant and accurate analysis of each machine and make use of appropriate technical language. Learners will explore the problems caused by different conditions and provide relevant justifications of their design solutions. Learners will provide a balanced, clear analysis of the importance of health and safety requirements in machine operation.

For pass standard, learners will examine the machines available to the land-based sectors and explain the selection of two different machines for given tasks. The task will require the selection of some form of ride-on prime mover such as a tractor, haulage/transport vehicle or ride-on machine such as a mower. Most of the evidence will be technically accurate and relevant. Learners will report on the suitability of the machines for a range of conditions. Their response might be limited in scope or unbalanced in parts but will be mostly appropriate, including realistic, specific references to health and safety, and limited but appropriate references to sustainability.

Learning aim B

For distinction standard, learners will evaluate the qualitative standard of practical work undertaken to achieve the completion of tasks against the given objectives, which include meeting relevant health and safety requirements. Learners will support their views with well-reasoned, convincing judgements. Learners will provide specific, well-selected evidence to show how and why their work meets the given requirements, making logical, robust connections between their performance and the given brief.

Learners will demonstrate use of complex machinery, requiring multiple operations and use of appropriate equipment. The evidence will include the use of power take-off (PTO)-powered three-point linkage mounted equipment. Tasks will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting the specification requirements. Learners will work safely to a professional industry standard and they will comply with best workplace practice at all times.

For merit standard, learners will safely carry out tasks involving complex machinery that requires multiple operations, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. Learners will demonstrate the use of PTO-powered three-point linkage mounted equipment. Learners will show clear evidence of both preparing and operating complex land-based machinery to meet given objectives. Tasks will be undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting the specification requirements. Learners will work to the standard of a competent employee.

Learners will demonstrate best workplace practice by working safely and in accordance with relevant legislation, ensuring the workplace is prepared and cleared. They will understand the need for, and demonstrate, correct tool, material and equipment procedures, including selection, use, transport, maintenance and storage.

For pass standard, learners will undertake tasks competently, safely and completely, meeting the specification requirements. Learners will safely prepare and operate simple land-based machines such as ride-on mowers and tractors for haulage. They will work to the standard of a novice employee.

Learners will demonstrate acceptable workplace practice by working safely and in accordance with relevant legislation, ensuring the workplace is cleared after task completion. They will demonstrate mostly correct tool, material and equipment procedures, including selection, use, transport, maintenance and storage.

Learners will show a realistic understanding of how different operator techniques may be used, although some aspects of their understanding might be limited in scope.

Learning aim C

For distinction standard, learners will review thoroughly the effectiveness of the techniques and workshop practices used to undertake the completion of tasks, supporting their views with well-reasoned judgements that cover all relevant factors. Learners will evaluate and report on how the techniques and practices used resulted in routine operator maintenance and repair being undertaken efficiently, accurately and completely. Learners will similarly provide an in-depth evaluation of the options available to carry out routine operator maintenance and repair, providing specific reasons that link logically to their views. Learners will dispose of any waste materials in a manner that fully complies with accepted practices and which shows full regard for the concepts and practices of sustainability. Evidence will use relevant and accurate terminology throughout, which supports a considered, comprehensive response.

For merit standard, learners will undertake tasks efficiently, accurately and completely, meeting the specification. Learners will proficiently, without errors, carry out routine maintenance and repair tasks, using appropriate equipment and a variety of tools and materials. They will work to the standard of a competent employee.

Learners will demonstrate best workplace practice by working safely and in accordance with relevant legislation, ensuring that the workplace is prepared and cleared. They will understand the need for, and demonstrate, correct tool, material and equipment procedures, including selection, use, transport, maintenance and storage. Learners will dispose of any waste materials in a manner that fully complies with accepted practices.

Learners will demonstrate clear understanding of the options for repair and maintenance by correctly assessing and reporting on potential faults in a machine and using the manufacturer's data to correctly specify replacement parts. Learners' assessment will be clear and technically accurate. They will use appropriate technical language in their evidence but this may be inconsistent.

For pass standard, learners will demonstrate that they can work safely and completely, meeting the specification requirements. There may, however, be a few minor inaccuracies or inefficiencies. They will carry out simple routine operator maintenance tasks, requiring few operations and a limited range of tools and materials. They will work to the standard of a novice employee.

Learners will demonstrate acceptable workplace practice by working safely and in accordance with relevant legislation, ensuring that the workplace is cleared after task completion. They will demonstrate correct tool, material and equipment procedures, including selection, use, transport, maintenance and storage. Any waste materials will be disposed of in line with acceptable working practices.

Learners will give realistic but limited explanations of the options available for the servicing and repair of machinery, using some technical language.

Links to other units

This unit links to Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners study the methods and skills needed to investigate habitats and to carry out wildlife habitat improvements and wildlife rehabilitation.

Unit introduction

Wildlife responds to changes in its habitat. Good animal management will be able to assess those changes, plan habitat improvements and carry them out for the benefit of the wildlife. Sometimes it may be necessary to rehabilitate wildlife. This unit will give you the practical skills you need to carry out a range of wildlife habitat and rehabilitation tasks.

You will learn how to survey and assess habitats in relation to wildlife needs, develop and follow a plan for improvements, and monitor the outcomes. You will also learn to assess wildlife for rehabilitation – for example following loss of habitat through development – and create and follow a plan to reintroduce the wildlife to a suitable habitat.

Whether you move into employment or to further study, the skills you develop in this unit will be invaluable. The study of wildlife and habitat is essential for good animal management. It is an integral part of a wide variety of careers, including conservation and environmental monitoring and planning.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand the characteristics of ecosystems for wildlife habitat planning and rehabilitation
- B** Carry out field studies into wildlife populations and their habitats for the purpose of planning for wildlife management
- C** Undertake practical wildlife and conservation management to affect biodiversity.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand the characteristics of ecosystems for wildlife habitat planning and rehabilitation	A1 Distribution of ecosystems A2 Relationships in ecosystems A3 Human interactions with ecosystems	A portfolio of evidence, such as maps, diagrams, flow charts and reports from investigative fieldwork.
B Carry out field studies into wildlife populations and their habitats for the purpose of planning for wildlife management	B1 Habitat surveys for wildlife management B2 Monitoring wildlife populations B3 Planning for wildlife habitat management and rehabilitation	A survey report, using survey, monitoring and other research information to develop animal- and habitat-specific plans to manage a wildlife population, including maps, task lists, cost-benefit analysis and schedules.
C Undertake practical wildlife and conservation management to affect biodiversity	C1 Interpretation of habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation plans C2 Carrying out practical habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation C3 Monitoring the outcomes of practical habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation	Evidence that demonstrates management tasks for habitat change and rehabilitation, which could be a photo log, signed witness statements and/or observation record(s).

Content

Learning aim A: Understand the characteristics of ecosystems for wildlife habitat planning and rehabilitation

A1 Distribution of ecosystems

- Geographical distribution of ecosystems:
 - scale of ecosystems, including biome, habitat, microhabitats and ecological niches
 - standard methods of mapping and classification, e.g. Phase 1 survey methodology and nomenclature.
- Factors affecting the distribution of ecosystems:
 - abiotic factors that influence the distribution of ecosystems at a range of scales, including global (e.g. atmospheric energy flows and climate zones), regional (e.g. distance from the sea and altitude), local (e.g. aspect and soil type) and micro (e.g. shade and slope)
 - biotic factors, including the modifying influence of plant, animal and human activity.
- Characteristics of major land biomes and habitats:
 - world biomes, to include the five major types: aquatic, desert, forest, grassland and tundra
 - UK habitats, to include coastal, lowland grassland and heathland, freshwater and lowland wetlands, upland, woodland
 - characteristics, to include altitude, latitude, distance from the sea, rainfall, wind speed and direction, temperature, aspect, soil type, fauna and flora.

A2 Relationships in ecosystems

- Energy flows in ecosystems:
 - the flow of energy through an ecosystem, including energy loss, e.g. through respiration and excretion
 - trophic levels, food chains and pyramids
 - natural cycles, including carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus and water.
- Wildlife in ecosystems:
 - relationships between animals and other species (including plants), to include predator/prey, symbiosis and parasitism
 - interactions in ecosystems to provide for animal needs, e.g. food, shelter, protection, migration, reproduction and competition.

A3 Human interactions with ecosystems

- Human impacts on ecosystems:
 - impact of human activities, including positive, negative, historical, present and future, e.g. Neolithic woodland clearance, creation of the Forestry Commission, the Common Agricultural Policy
 - main threats to ecosystems at global, national and local scales, e.g. climate change, depletion of fish stocks and ash dieback.
- Protection and conservation strategies:
 - the use of planning and other environmental legislation
 - funding for habitat stewardship
 - the role of charitable and volunteer organisations
 - rehabilitation of wildlife and its impact on biodiversity, including licensing of rehabilitation
 - the range of conservation strategies, e.g. catch and release, captive breeding, maintaining genetic diversity, habitat management.

Learning aim B: Carry out field studies into wildlife populations and their habitats for the purpose of planning for wildlife management

B1 Habitat surveys for wildlife management

Methods and considerations required to carry out habitat surveys:

- planning a survey, choice of survey area, equipment
- sampling techniques, e.g. random, systematic, stratified
- health and safety considerations, e.g. lone working, working near water and use of personal protection equipment (PPE), e.g. in dense undergrowth
- survey techniques, e.g. quadrat, transect, kick methodologies
- recording of results, e.g. tally charts and mapping, including field use of ICT.

B2 Monitoring wildlife populations

Methods and considerations required to carry out the monitoring of wildlife populations:

- planning animal monitoring or population surveys, e.g. equipment, scheduling, methodology
- direct methods, including catch and release, estimation techniques, e.g. of bird populations
- legislation, including health and safety, licensing of live capture programmes
- indirect, non-invasive methods, including tracks and signs, use of tracking tunnels, moving transects, e.g. butterfly walks
- recording and reporting of data.

B3 Planning for wildlife habitat management and rehabilitation

Developing a rehabilitation or habitat plan for targeted wildlife species:

- using survey data to develop a species and habitat plan with measurable outcomes
- task allocation and schedules, taking into account, e.g. seasonality of operations
- tools, materials and equipment used for practical tasks, including suitable general tools (e.g. billhooks, bowsaws) and species-specific tools (e.g. nesting boxes)
- health and safety considerations, including compliance with relevant legislation
- use of monitoring programmes to evaluate outcomes, e.g. species counts, marking, clay pads
- assessing the viability of rehabilitating specific wildlife in terms of survival and recovery
- developing a species-specific rehabilitation plan to include standard release factors that influence a successful outcome
- the development of monitoring strategies that will enable the success of rehabilitation to be evaluated.

Learning aim C: Undertake practical wildlife and conservation management to affect biodiversity

C1 Interpretation of habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation plans

Implementing habitat and rehabilitation plans:

- translating plans into tasks
- scheduling, taking account of seasonality
- job specifications
- identification of tools, materials and equipment
- ordering materials
- risk assessments
- identification of relevant legislation, codes of practice and licensing
- identifying skill sets, e.g. suitably qualified chainsaw operators.

C2 Carrying out practical habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation

Safe completion of planned tasks required to manage project, including:

- task allocation
- time management
- correct selection, transport, use, maintenance and storage of tools, materials and equipment
- working safely, assessing risks
- compliance with relevant legislation, codes of practice and planning guidelines
- minimising environmental damage and disturbance.

C3 Monitoring the outcomes of practical habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation

Determining the impact of practical habitat management and rehabilitation:

- reporting the outcomes of practical habitat management and rehabilitation
- measuring actual outcomes against predicted outcomes, e.g. increase or decrease in target species or survivability
- use of monitoring programmes to track outcomes, e.g. use of dormouse boxes to track population change
- analysis of strengths and weaknesses
- opportunities for improvement, e.g. extending the area of habitat improvement.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand the characteristics of ecosystems for wildlife habitat planning and rehabilitation		A.D1 Evaluate human impacts on wildlife ecosystems and the range of responses to mitigate or enhance those impacts.
A.P1 Explain the distribution of ecosystems. A.P2 Explain different relationships within ecosystems.	A.M1 Analyse the relationships between named UK animal species and their interactions with their habitats.	
Learning aim B: Carry out field studies into wildlife populations and their habitats for the purpose of planning for wildlife management		BC.D2 Justify a specific habitat or rehabilitation plan using survey and monitoring data. BC.D3 Evaluate the impact of the rehabilitation plan and tasks carried out on biodiversity and the wildlife habitat.
B.P3 Perform wildlife habitat surveys and monitor wildlife populations. B.P4 Prepare a clear located habitat management or rehabilitation plan for a named UK animal, using the findings of habitat and animal population surveys.	B.M2 Analyse survey and monitoring data to produce, for a named UK animal species, a located habitat management or rehabilitation plan.	
Learning aim C: Undertake practical wildlife and conservation management to affect biodiversity		
C.P5 Demonstrate the proficient completion of habitat management tasks in accordance with an agreed plan. C.P6 Demonstrate, under supervision, wildlife rehabilitation in accordance with an agreed plan.	C.M3 Demonstrate appropriate techniques for habitat management and wildlife rehabilitation, adapting techniques for changing circumstances.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, BC.D2, BC.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of habitats suitable for detailed survey work
- wildlife animal species suitable for population studies
- a licensed animal rehabilitation programme.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will show a depth of understanding by evaluating how human impacts on ecosystems can be both positive and negative. They will apply knowledge to less familiar situations and include impacts at a variety of scales and from different historical periods. Their evaluation will be based on properly referenced case studies and will include original fieldwork. Learners will be able to demonstrate the complexity of human impacts and include both intentional and unintentional outcomes. They will show through their analysis that cost-benefit factors can influence outcomes.

Learners will show that they understand that planned outcomes are often difficult to predict and that the scientific basis for decision making can be ambivalent, for example when examining badger culls.

Learners will justify their conclusions by linking impacts to the change or breakdown of specific relationships through human intervention, rather than by explaining them in general terms.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate their understanding of specific named habitats and species. Learners will show clearly the relationships between different species, including both the nature of the relationship and the energy flow demonstrated. They will make reasoned, analytical judgements, showing that they understand how the habitat provides for the needs of the animal, and applying their knowledge to less familiar situations. For example, honeysuckle is the preferred nesting material for the dormouse and it also provides nectar.

For pass standard, learners will recall knowledge to explain basic world biomes and UK habitats. They will include the ways in which biotic and abiotic factors control the distribution of habitats, and demonstrate awareness that these factors can operate on the very smallest scales. Learners will include specific examples, referring to well-defined situations in order to demonstrate understanding. They will relate natural cycles to specific plant and animal species and to named habitat examples.

Learners will demonstrate their understanding of the different relationships in ecosystems – including energy flows, wildlife and the impact of humans – exploring well-defined situations and structuring their knowledge in order to reach suitable conclusions.

Learning aims B and C

For distinction standard, learners will be able to articulate arguments concisely and professionally in order to justify their habitat management or wildlife rehabilitation plan. They will be able to relate their plan to measurable outcomes and should describe a monitoring plan to use detailed analysis and research in order to justify recommendations made in the plan. Their rationale should be based on relevant primary data, supported with additional, referenced research.

Learners will confidently show that their plan will address specific relationships between the target species and its environment. For example, planting hazel coppice will provide mid-layer transport pathways, overhead cover from predators and a valuable food source for the dormouse.

Learners will draw on knowledge from across the learning aims to reflect on the success of their plan and the tasks they have undertaken. They will use detailed analysis to make objective judgements on both the process and product of the tasks. Learners will predict the impact their tasks will have on the wildlife environment and, specifically, the relationships between the target species and its environment. They will also show awareness of the difficulty of making definitive predictions.

Learners will demonstrate awareness that the tasks they have undertaken may have negative impacts on the target species and other relationships in the environment; for example, rehabilitation of a predator species may alter the equilibrium of the environment. Improvements identified should include better ways of working, as well as improved outcomes.

For merit standard, learners will make reasoned, analytical judgements on the outcomes of their surveys and produce a located plan for habitat improvements or rehabilitation based on their analysis. The plan should detail the tasks required, as well as identifying appropriate solutions and explaining how these tasks will impact on one or more named target animal species.

Learners will select appropriate solutions in order to react to changing circumstances during the completion of tasks, identifying these solutions from practical exploration. Where tasks need to be modified, learners will be able to modify techniques to ensure that the agreed outcomes will still be realised.

For pass standard, learners will select and competently demonstrate a range of appropriate survey techniques, targeting specific animal species and their habitats. They will carry out survey techniques correctly and safely. The surveys must be species specific, for example surveying the amount of honeysuckle used as bedding by the dormouse. Learners should be similarly competent in investigating wildlife populations, although it is unlikely that this will be carried out through licensed catch and release methods unless undertaken as part of an authorised programme. More appropriate will be the use of direct observation, for example population counts, good identification of tracks and signs, tracking tunnels and other less invasive methods. Recording of data will be comprehensive and accurate, and findings will be presented in an appropriate format, including, for example, graphs, tables and maps.

Learners will select and demonstrate competent practical skills for both habitat improvement and wildlife rehabilitation. They will show that they can work safely and efficiently, and with due regard for other people, animal welfare and the environment. The correct and safe selection, transport and use of tools, materials and equipment is essential.

For rehabilitation, learners will act under supervision to ensure good animal welfare. For all of the practical tasks, learners will be expected to show that they can minimise environmental impacts.

Links to other units

This unit links to *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- opportunities for observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 12: Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to control common countryside pests and predators using non-lethal and lethal methods.

Unit introduction

There are a number of animal pests and predators that cause problems in the countryside. They can harm other wildlife, farm animals and, sometimes, people. They can also cause economic damage by destroying crops and trees.

In this unit, you will learn how to identify pests and predators and conduct surveys of their habitats. You will learn how to use your habitat knowledge to select measures to control these pests and predators and use these methods in a practical setting. You will learn how to combine control measures to create an integrated management strategy that will ensure pest and predator control is carried out efficiently, legally and with the minimum impact to the environment and other species.

This unit will benefit those entering the pest control industry as well as being useful to those entering the land-based sectors. It is an essential part of managing the countryside and it will help you to progress to employment, where you may be in a role with responsibility for pest control. It will also give you an excellent introduction to controlling common pests and predators in the UK if you wish to progress to a higher-education course such as countryside management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand UK pest and predator ecology for the purpose of their control and the control measures used for countryside management
- B** Undertake surveys of UK pests and predators to develop integrated management strategies for their control
- C** Implement integrated management strategies to control UK countryside pests and predators.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand UK pest and predator ecology for the purpose of their control and the control measures used for countryside management	A1 Ecology of countryside pests and predators A2 Impact of pests and predators A3 Methods of controlling countryside pests and predators	A report on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UK pests and predators • methods of controlling them • pest and predator ecology.
B Undertake surveys of UK pests and predators to develop integrated management strategies for their control	B1 Planning surveys of UK pests and predators B2 Carrying out surveys of UK pests and predators B3 Developing integrated pest and predator management strategies	Surveys of control areas for pest and predator activity and significant habitat factors or features that support the target species. Production of integrated management strategies to control named species.
C Implement integrated management strategies to control UK countryside pests and predators	C1 Preparing to implement an integrated pest and predator management strategy C2 Implementing pest and predator control measures C3 Review integrated management strategy	Portfolio of evidence of practical pest and predator control, e.g. logbook, observation records, annotated maps.

Content

Learning aim A: Understand UK pest and predator ecology for the purpose of their control and the control measures used for countryside management

A1 Ecology of countryside pests and predators

Behaviour and characteristics of countryside pests and predators in their habitats.

- Vertebrate and invertebrate pest and predator ecology, including:
 - behavioural characteristics, e.g. caching of food by foxes and squirrels, range and distribution, behaviour on discovery
 - breeding, mortality and life expectancy, to include breeding season, number of litters, offspring survival rates
 - social structure, e.g. solitary, communal, rearing of offspring
 - diet and feeding, to include main components of diet, variety of diet, pattern of feeding
 - seasonal variation in behaviour, food supply, population.
- Relationships between pest and predator species and their habitats, including:
 - predator/prey relationships between target species and other fauna
 - food webs and food chains
 - habitat characteristics that affect pest and predator species, e.g. availability of nesting material, competition for resources with other species
 - seasonal variation in habitat cycles that have an impact on pest and predator activity, e.g. plant growth and cover, diurnal changes
 - identification of significant habitat factors that affect pest/predator populations, e.g. availability of ground cover for protection, availability of suitable nesting sites.

Common UK pest and predator insects, crustacea, birds and mammals and their impact on countryside management.

- Mammals:
 - pests, e.g. rabbits, moles, deer, rats, mice, grey squirrels
 - predators, e.g. foxes, mink.
- Birds:
 - pests, e.g. pigeons, geese
 - predators, e.g. crows, gulls, cormorants.
- Insects, e.g. wasps, bees, hornets.
- Crustacea, e.g. mitten crab, signal crayfish.
- Common non-target or protected species with special conservation status:
 - controlling protected species, e.g. badgers
 - protected non-target species, e.g. water vole, dormouse, red squirrel, raptors, white-clawed crayfish.
- Evidence of pest and predator presence, including:
 - sightings, hair, fur or feather remains, scent, calls
 - tracks or footprints for direction and speed of travel, use of runs
 - feeding signs, e.g. crop and plant debris or damage, gnawing patterns on nuts, ring barking
 - pellets and droppings
 - remains of prey, e.g. bones, scales, egg fragments
 - homes and hiding or resting places.

A2 Impact of pests and predators

Impacts associated with countryside pests and predators:

- economic, e.g. crop damage and contamination, timber destruction, livestock loss
- wildlife and habitat loss, e.g. nest destruction, overgrazing, loss of biodiversity
- health, e.g. bites and stings, leptospirosis (Weil's disease), allergic reactions, aggressive behaviour to members of the public
- amenity loss, e.g. fouling by geese of grass/sports pitches, molehills in ornamental lawns
- awareness of positive impacts, e.g. use of predators as control measures.

A3 Methods of controlling countryside pests and predators

Common non-lethal and lethal methods of controlling countryside pests and predators, effectiveness, use and safety considerations.

- Lethal methods of countryside pest and predator control, including:
 - shooting, including the use of shotgun, rifle and air rifle
 - traps and snares, including live and spring traps, glue boards, Larsen traps
 - long nets, purse nets
 - gassing and poisoning
 - use of animals, e.g. dogs, ferrets, birds of prey.
- Non-lethal methods of countryside pest and predator control, including:
 - fencing and guards for plant protection
 - electric mesh fencing for chickens or other domestic fowl
 - acoustic scarers, including whistling tape, gas cannon
 - visual scarers, including flutter tape, balloons, kites, lasers
 - chemical repellents and treatments, e.g. 'egg oiling'
 - habitat management
 - use of animals to deter, e.g. hazing with dogs, raptor patrols
 - removal of pests or predators, e.g. honey bee swarms.
- Legislation, guidance and codes of practice for controlling countryside pests and predators, including:
 - general protected status for all animals
 - special conservation status for target and non-target species
 - licensing of control methods and integrated management strategies
 - animal welfare, including humane despatch
 - codes of practice from professional organisations
 - legislation regarding health and safety, including risk assessments and use of personal protective equipment (PPE)
 - licensing and use of hazardous substances
 - firearms legislation and licensing.
- Advantages and disadvantages of common methods, to include:
 - skill level required, e.g. setting a mousetrap compared to a Venn trap
 - impact on non-target species, e.g. setting a cage trap compared to setting a spring trap
 - ease of use, e.g. use of poison for rats instead of traps requiring monitoring
 - safety considerations when using poisons, firearms, gas, lethal traps
 - effectiveness, including selecting correct methods, correct species, correct timings, correct geographical location.

Learning aim B: Undertake surveys of UK pests and predators to develop integrated management strategies for their control

B1 Planning surveys of UK pests and predators

- Selection of survey locations, to include:
 - geographical location of survey areas – origin of pests or predators, e.g. from outside the impact area (Canada geese, foxes), relationship between origin and impact areas, methods to locate where pests or predators originate from (trails, tracks, signs, sightings)
 - timing of surveys to account for seasonal and diurnal variations in activity
 - ensuring legal access to survey locations, including letters of permission
 - ensuring surveys comply with legislative and licensing requirements.
- Selection of survey equipment, e.g. insect collecting nets; sample bags for collecting physical evidence; binoculars; quadrats; tape measures; keys and guides for identification of trees; compass to measure the alignment of tracks or flight paths; sketchbook, e.g. to produce drawings of warren systems, tree bark damage; letters or permissions to access land; licences for survey activities, if appropriate.
- Selection of recording methods, to include:
 - photographs
 - sketches
 - audio (for calls)
 - tally charts, e.g. to record sightings, frequency observations
 - maps for annotations of pest and predator activity.
- Risk assessments and PPE.

B2 Carrying out surveys of UK pests and predators

- Pest and predator surveys:
 - mapping indicators of pest, predator and non-target species activity
 - estimating pest and predator populations from tracks, signs and sightings
 - identifying habitat factors that support pest and predator populations
 - assessing the impact of pest and predator activity, e.g. impacts on amenity value, economic, environmental.
- Selection of survey findings presentation methods, to include:
 - annotated maps and diagrams
 - labelled photographs and sketches
 - statistical presentation methods, e.g. pie charts, bar charts recording species or population counts.

B3 Developing integrated pest and predator management strategies

Combining pest and predator ecology with a variety of effective control measures to create integrated management strategies that target one or more UK pests and predators.

- Links between pest and predator ecology and control methods, e.g. flightless period to control Canada geese, baiting traps with preferred food naturally available in the habitat, identifying rabbit runs to place traps, nets, placing visual scarers on flight paths.
- Selection of appropriate control measures taking account of:
 - seasonal/diurnal variations in target species behaviour
 - appropriate licensing and regulatory frameworks
 - available resources, e.g. allocating time to check traps, skill set of people involved
 - ecological research, published sources, including technical information notes, generic integrated management strategies.
- Combination of control measures to create integrated management strategies.
- Selection/creation/updating of risk assessments.

- Integrating management strategies for pest and predator control, to include:
 - target species
 - geographical extent of control area
 - analysis of pest/predator impacts in control area
 - types of control measures, their location, timing and checking
 - relationship between selected control measures and ecology of target species
 - minimising the environmental impact of control measures
 - minimising the impact on non-target species
 - legislative requirements, e.g. control licences
 - expected outcomes of control measures
 - monitoring of outcomes, e.g. to determine the need for additional control measures, increased geographical coverage, longer timescale.
- Ethical considerations, e.g. use of Larsen traps and other lethal methods of control, badger culling, fox hunting, eradication of grey squirrels to preserve red squirrel populations.

Learning aim C: Implement integrated management strategies to control UK countryside pests and predators

C1 Preparing to implement an integrated pest and predator management strategy

Considerations for the practical application of integrated management strategies for UK pest and predator control.

- Availability of people who are suitably qualified, licensed or experienced to use, if appropriate, firearms and gas or poisons, and to set traps, nets.
- Equipment, e.g. firearms and ammunition, including appropriate storage in transit, checking traps, scarers, fencing for functional suitability, tuning traps and snares, tools, equipment and materials for habitat management, installation of control measures, warning signs, if appropriate.
- Appropriate documentation, including:
 - on-demand documents, e.g. firearms/shotgun certificates, class or general control licences, permissions to shoot, permissions to access land
 - record keeping, e.g. location of control measures.
- Health and safety, including:
 - provision of appropriate PPE
 - risk assessments, including lone working if appropriate
 - arrangements for appropriate waste/carcass disposal.
- Arrangements for daily monitoring of traps and snares in accordance with legislation and codes of practice.

C2 Implementing pest and predator control measures

- Installation of control measures, including:
 - correct selection of control sites
 - setting traps and snares or use of other appropriate lethal control measures, e.g. shooting, dusting of wasp nests
 - minimising environmental impact
 - installation, repair and maintenance of non-lethal deterrent measures.
- Monitoring of lethal control measures, to include:
 - despatch and disposal of target/non-target species
 - release of native non-target species
 - resetting traps and snares, ensuring all are accounted for.
- Monitoring of non-lethal control measures, to include:
 - effectiveness of fencing, wire, netting
 - effectiveness of habitat management
 - use of acoustic and visual scarers.

- Removal of control measures in line with legislation, to include traps, snares, cages.
- Monitoring of outcomes to determine effectiveness of control measures, e.g. comparing visual with acoustic scarers.
- Safe working practice, e.g. while shooting, using poisons, near open water.
- Compliance with current, relevant legislation.

C3 Review integrated management strategy

- Review of integrated management strategy, to include:
 - reliability and validity of surveys – whether pests or predators were located
 - how the collected data was used and its reliability – whether data collection methods could be improved or different data collected
 - effectiveness of control measures, e.g. cost effectiveness of control measures against impacts of pest/predator activity
 - environmental impacts of control measures
 - impacts on non-target species
 - compliance with legislative framework – whether the strategy was fully compliant
 - how the review process can inform future strategies – lessons learned, identified improvements, how strategies could be adapted to prevent situations arising in the future.
- Methods of reviewing, to include report, presentation, peer review, expert review.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand UK pest and predator ecology for the purpose of their control and the control measures used for countryside management		A.D1 Evaluate the appropriateness of the measures available to control UK pests and predators in relation to their ecology and impact.
A.P1 Explain the ecology and impact of common UK pests and predators. A.P2 Explain common UK pest and predator control measures.	A.M1 Analyse the relationship between control measures used and the ecology and impact of specified UK pests and predators.	
Learning aim B: Undertake surveys of UK pests and predators to develop integrated management strategies for their control		B.D2 Justify decisions made for own complex integrated management strategies based on an analysis of own surveys and research.
B.P3 Carry out simple surveys of UK pests and predators. B.P4 Plan simple integrated management strategies for pest or predator species based on own surveys and research.	B.M2 Plan complex integrated management strategies for the control of pest or predator species based on own surveys and research.	
Learning aim C: Implement integrated management strategies to control UK countryside pests and predators		C.D3 Evaluate the effectiveness of implementation of own complex integrated management strategy to control a pest or predator species.
C.P5 Carry out own simple integrated management strategies to control pest or predator species. C.P6 Explain the effectiveness of own integrated management strategy.	C.M3 Demonstrate a complex integrated management strategy to control a pest or predator species. C.M4 Analyse the effectiveness of own integrated management strategy in controlling a pest or predator species.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- habitats with pest and predator control requirements
- a range of commonly-used lethal and non-lethal control measures.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will demonstrate depth of understanding by evaluating the ecology, habitats and impacts of common UK invertebrate and vertebrate pests and predators. They will demonstrate the complexity of specific impacts of pest and predator activity, including economic, amenity, health and safety, environmental and biodiversity. Learners will provide well-selected evidence to show how the habitat meets the ecological needs of the pest or predator, and that complex variations in the habitat may cause increased impacts.

Learners will thoroughly review the control measures used, fully understanding their relationship with the ecology and habitat of the target species, and taking account of seasonal and diurnal variations in habitat and pest and predator behaviour. Through their evaluation, they will demonstrate that they fully understand the advantages and disadvantages of different control measures, and how to minimise the impact of control measures on the environment in general and named non-target species in particular. Learners will relate specific legislation, codes of practice and guidance to target and non-target species, understanding the need for legislation.

For merit standard, learners will show their understanding of the ecology, habitats and impacts of common UK invertebrate and vertebrate pests and predators by demonstrating reasoned, analytical judgements. Learners will show clearly the range of impacts pests and predators have on human activity, the environment and biodiversity. They will make reasoned, analytical judgements, showing they understand the complexity of the relationships between pests and predators and the habitats in which they are found.

Learners will demonstrate that they understand the control measures for named species and they will justify the use of different control measures, giving the advantages and disadvantages. They will relate specific control measures to the ecology and habitat of the species. Learners will demonstrate that they are aware of the legislation, codes of practice and guidance that relate to pest and predator control, and how they relate to specific target and non-target species.

For pass standard, learners will show that they can recall knowledge and understanding of the ecology of common UK invertebrate and vertebrate pests and predators, the habitats in which they are found, and the impacts they have on human activity and other wildlife. They will demonstrate that they can identify specific pests and predators from their tracks, signs and sightings.

Learners will include specific examples of common, legal control measures, both lethal and non-lethal, to demonstrate understanding. They will explain appropriate control measures for named species of pests and predators, including their advantages and disadvantages. Learners will know which legislation, codes of practice and guidance relates to pest and predator control.

Learning aims B and C

For distinction standard, learners will conduct field surveys for pest and predator activity and their habitats. They will use the findings of their own field surveys and other research to develop a complex integrated management strategy that demonstrates the depth and breadth of their evaluation of the surveyed habitats, the target species and the available control measures.

For a complex integrated management strategy, learners will be able to give reasons for their choice of control measures and how they expect them to affect the target species while limiting impacts on the environment, including non-target species. They will relate, in full, their surveys, their integrated management strategy and the ecology or habitat of the target species.

Learners will demonstrate the implementation of integrated management strategies for a named UK mammalian and a named UK avian pest or predator, with at least one integrated management strategy being complex and to industry standard.

They will review their own integrated management strategy, showing their understanding of the reasons for its effectiveness, suggesting improvements and further intervention, where appropriate, and how they might apply their learning to different pest and predator situations.

For merit standard, learners will conduct field surveys for pest and predator activity and their habitats. They will analyse their surveys to allow a full investigation of the relationships between target species, non-target species and habitats.

They will use the findings of their own field surveys and other research to develop a complex integrated management strategy based on their reasoned analysis of the surveyed habitats, the target species and the available control measures. This strategy must contain a wide range of control measures related to the ecology of the target species. The control measures would take account of seasonal variations and require specialist expertise or licensing.

For a complex integrated management strategy, they will be able to give reasons for their choice of control measures and how they expect them to affect the target species while limiting impacts on the environment, including non-target species. They will show links between their surveys, the integrated management strategy and the ecology or habitat of the target species.

Learners will demonstrate the implementation of complex integrated management strategies for a named UK mammalian and a named avian pest or predator, with at least one integrated management strategy being complex. They will prepare and execute the strategy to industry standard with respect to choice of control measures, their placement, appropriate monitoring and removal, humane despatch (where appropriate), steps taken to minimise the impact on non-target species and the environment, safe working practice and compliance with relevant legislation.

They will review their own complex integrated management strategy, showing their understanding of the reasons for its effectiveness. They will relate their review to the industry standards followed.

For pass standard, learners will conduct field surveys for tracks, signs and sightings of common UK pests and predators, the habitats in which they are found, and including some evidence of the activities of non-target species. Their analysis of the survey will focus on the target species, with limited investigation of the relationships between target species, non-target species and habitats.

They will use the findings of their own field surveys and other research to develop simple integrated management strategies for a named UK mammalian and a named UK avian pest or predator. These strategies will contain a limited range of control measures where specialist expertise or licensing may not be required.

For a simple integrated management strategy, they will be able to give reasons for their choice of control measures and their intended effect on the target species, identifying the measures they will take to limit impacts on the environment, including non-target species.

Learners will demonstrate the implementation of two simple integrated management strategies, one for a named UK mammalian and one for a named UK avian pest or predator. They will prepare and execute simple strategies for these using safe working practices and complying with current, relevant legislation.

They will review one of their own integrated management strategies for its effectiveness. This will include the surveys undertaken; the selection, placement, monitoring and appropriate removal of control measures; the impact on the target and non-target species; and an analysis of the cost of the strategy against the measurable benefits.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats
- Unit 7: Woodland Management
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 13: Gamekeeping

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to carry out the management of effective gamekeeping and sustainable environments as part of gamekeeping in the UK countryside.

Unit introduction

There are thousands of full-time gamekeepers employed in the UK. Today, there are many people who spend their leisure time and money rearing game and maintaining habitats on their own small shoots. While gamekeepers are still responsible for the husbandry of both reared and wild game for sporting shooting, they also use their skills as land managers. Their skills play an important part in shaping the countryside and in achieving sustainability.

In this unit, you will learn about the private and public stakeholders and the influences that form the framework in which gamekeepers work. You will investigate and develop skills in how to rear stock game birds from eggs, understanding the process from stock bird management through to egg selection, incubation and hatching. You will develop an appreciation for managing wildlife species and habitats as part of the role of a gamekeeper.

This unit will help you progress into working roles such as gamekeeper or countryside ranger, having developed a broad range of relevant knowledge, understanding and skills in game and environmental management. It can also help you move into further or higher education in conservation or wildlife management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate key external influences on gamekeeping
- B** Carry out game bird production as part of effective gamekeeping management
- C** Carry out sustainable habitat management for successful gamekeeping.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate key external influences on gamekeeping	A1 Key aspects of field sports A2 Legislation A3 Stakeholders associated with gamekeeping and field sports	A report evaluating the importance of stakeholders and legal requirements on countryside management.
B Carry out game bird production as part of effective gamekeeping management	B1 Planning for breeding B2 Incubation and hatchery operations B3 Managing health and welfare in game birds B4 Management of stock birds B5 Factors affecting health and welfare of game birds	An evaluation of a plan for a game bird breeding and rearing project, supported by evidence of carrying out the incubation and hatchery of game birds.
C Carry out sustainable habitat management for successful gamekeeping	C1 Types of game and wild species C2 Impact of native and non-native species on gamekeeping C3 Sustainable gamekeeping	A report evaluating the role of the gamekeeper in managing local habitats sustainably and the interaction of species.

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate key external influences on gamekeeping

A1 Key aspects of field sports

- Field sport debates, including the importance of balanced debates and public perceptions.
- Issues that underpin current arguments for and against field sports, including pest control, tradition, employment opportunities, contribution to rural economy, cruelty to animals, conflicts and challenges, outdated pastime, elitism, alternative methods of pest control.
- Organisations for and against field sports, including aims of the organisation, mode of operation, approach to giving balanced views of both sides of argument.

A2 Legislation

- Current statutory legislation at time of teaching.
- Impact and practical application of legislation to game management.
- Countryside protection and sustainability issues.
- Access and trespass.
- Wildlife protection.
- Codes of practice relating to effective and sustainable management of game in the UK.

A3 Stakeholders associated with gamekeeping and field sports

- Types of major stakeholders, including private stakeholders, public organisations, governmental bodies and campaign groups.
- Key governmental and industry organisations, including Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra) and local authorities, British Association for Shooting and Conservation (BASC).
- Potential impact and roles of stakeholders on the game industry, e.g. influencing public perception, influencing legislative changes, duties of public organisations, population control and its role in conservation of species, political, revenue generation, research, advisory.

Learning aim B: Carry out game bird production as part of effective gamekeeping management

B1 Planning for breeding

- Sources of breeding stock and eggs.
- Buying in eggs.
- Catching-up stock birds.
- Operation of a closed flock.
- Identification and sexing of breeding stock.
- Relevant current legislation at time of teaching.
- Hygiene practices.
- Link to bird breeding seasons, including pheasant and partridge.
- Breeding behaviour.
- Advantages and disadvantages of each system, e.g. costs, survival rate, efficiency savings, staffing requirements.

B2 Incubation and hatchery operations

- Preparing the incubator.
- Importance of hygiene at all stages of game bird production, including cleaning and disinfection.
- Conditions for successful incubation for both embryonic development and hatching, including time, temperature, humidity, turning, hatch-to-egg ratio.

- Methods for monitoring and maintaining the environment, including candling and weighing eggs, digital thermometers, data loggers, dry bulb.
- Operation of incubators.
- Methods used to confirm fertility and monitor embryo development, including candling and egg weighing.
- Chick handling techniques.
- Appropriate recording systems, e.g. whiteboards, databases and paper-based documents.

B3 Managing health and welfare in game birds

- External symptoms, including high mortality rate, ruffled or fluffed feathers, droopy head, abnormal faeces and 'snicking' (mycoplasma).
- Normal and abnormal behaviours, e.g. lethargy, gaping, change in feed and water consumption, hysteria.
- Signs of stress and disorder, including reduced appetite, reduced egg production.
- Veterinary treatments and management of injury, diseases and disorders.

B4 Management of stock birds

- General husbandry requirements of stock birds, including feeding, water, cleaning and suitable housing, specialist requirements and the five animal needs.
- Welfare requirements, including stocking density, prevention of fighting, reduction of treading damage and suitable sex ratios.
- Factors affecting fertility and hatchability of eggs.
- Specifications for different types of laying pen, including large communal pens and pair boxes.
- Egg grading and storage.
- Specifications for grading eggs suitable for incubation, including size, cleanliness, damage, colour.
- Egg cleaning and sanitising procedures, including washing, disinfecting, fogging.
- Suitable storage conditions to maintain viability of eggs, including temperature, humidity and time.
- Rearing game birds from day-old to poultry stage to maintain high survival rate.
- Appropriate recording systems, including mortality records, medications record and breeding records.
- Impact of potential economic losses that could arise from poor management of stock birds, e.g. fewer birds available for shoots.

B5 Factors affecting health and welfare of game birds

- Common diseases, including coccidiosis, rotavirus, starve-out, mycoplasma protozoa and pasturella, and the management of such diseases.
- Effects of stress on day-old to poultry stage.
- Behavioural disorders, including feather pecking.
- Eco/end parasites, including intestinal worms, lice and mites.
- Nutritional requirements at different stages of growth.
- Biosecurity procedures, including planning, methods of disease transmission and control procedures:
 - exclusion of wild birds
 - change of ground
 - isolation of sick birds
 - culling of sick birds
 - role of the veterinary surgeon and specialist veterinary surgeon in managing disease, post-mortem, anti-mortem.
- Pre-diseased.

Learning aim C: Carry out sustainable habitat management for successful gamekeeping

C1 Types of game and wild species

- Game bird species, including pheasant, grouse, partridge, quail, pigeon, woodcock, moorhen, snipe.
- Wild fowl, ducks and geese.
- Other (non-bird) game species, including hare, grey squirrel.
- Breeding and shooting seasons across the UK:
 - open, e.g. game bird and wild fowl dates
 - closed seasons
 - ground, e.g. hare and rabbit dates.

C2 Impact of native and non-native species on gamekeeping

- Impact of other native and non-native species, including control of pest and predator species, grouse moor management, benefits of cover crops for farmland birds.
- Introduction of non-native species, including American mink, Signal crayfish, Asian hornet, grey squirrel, knotweed.
- Reintroduction of once native species, including wild boar, beaver, wolf, lynx.
- Measuring impact of species and environmental conditions on game.
- Biodiversity action plan for different species and the importance for the gamekeeper.
- Industry guidelines for sustainable releasing of species.

C3 Sustainable gamekeeping

- The gamekeeper's role in different environments, e.g. upland or lowland.
- Activities of the gamekeeper in managing species to preserve the environment.
- Sustainable gamekeeping practices in different environments relevant to the gamekeeper, including waste disposal and dealing with hazardous substances.
- Promoting sustainability of shoot days.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate key external influences on gamekeeping		A.D1 Evaluate the importance of the impact of field sports, different stakeholders and relevant legislation in countryside management.
A.P1 Explain the role of field sports in countryside management. A.P2 Explain the potential impact of different stakeholders and relevant legislation in countryside management.	A.M1 Analyse the potential impact of field sports, different stakeholders and legislation in countryside management.	
Learning aim B: Carry out game bird production as part of effective gamekeeping management		B.D2 Evaluate the effectiveness of the process of breeding management with game birds, making recommendations for improvement.
B.P3 Produce a plan for game bird breeding and rearing, maintaining health and welfare. B.P4 Competently demonstrate incubation and hatchery of game birds.	B.M2 Justify the decisions taken during the planning of game bird breeding and management. B.M3 Proficiently demonstrate incubation and hatchery of game birds.	
Learning aim C: Carry out sustainable habitat management for successful gamekeeping		C.D3 Use survey information to evaluate the interaction of game, native and non-native species and the impact on sustainable gamekeeping.
C.P5 Perform a survey of key types of game species and native and non-native species to measure environmental impact. C.P6 Carry out sustainable habitat activities as part of the role of the gamekeeper.	C.M4 Carry out efficiently a survey of the interaction of game, native and non-native species and the impact on sustainable gamekeeping.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of three summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aim: B (B.P3, B.P4, B.M2, B.M3, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M4, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- incubation, hatchery and rearing facilities
- game birds for breeding
- game bird eggs for incubation, hatching and rearing of young
- suitable local habitats
- scientific measuring equipment, thermometers and hygrometers.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will thoroughly examine the variety of organisations and legislative requirements involved in gamekeeping as part of countryside management. Learners will show a robust, comprehensive understanding of the variety, aims, roles and importance of the impact that stakeholders have on the gamekeeping industry. Learners will evaluate application and impact when reviewing specific organisations, demonstrating accurate understanding of the legislative requirements that gamekeepers have to apply in daily management practices. Learners will provide well-reasoned arguments, including advantages and disadvantages of field sports, synthesising in-depth knowledge and understanding of organisations and the legal implications of field sports in the UK.

For merit standard, learners will provide a clear analysis of the variety of organisations and legislative requirements involved in gamekeeping as part of countryside management. Learners will show a clear, detailed understanding of the variety, aims and roles, analysing any potential impact that stakeholders have on the gamekeeping industry. Learners will analyse the impact when reviewing specific organisations, demonstrating detailed knowledge and understanding of the legislative requirements that gamekeepers have to apply in daily management practices. Learners will present a balanced analysis that includes advantages and disadvantages of field sports, drawing on mostly relevant knowledge and understanding of organisations and the legal implications of field sports in the UK.

For pass standard, learners will provide a realistic explanation of the variety of organisations and legislative requirements involved in gamekeeping as part of countryside management. Learners will identify and explain the potential impact when reviewing specific organisations, demonstrating some relevant knowledge and understanding of the legislative requirements that gamekeepers have to apply in daily management practices. Learners will identify both positive and negative aspects of field sports, although their explanations might be unbalanced or limited in parts. Learners will show evidence of drawing on some relevant knowledge and understanding of organisations and the legal implications of field sports in the UK.

Learning aim B

For distinction standard, learners will provide a highly effective plan for game bird breeding and rearing, maintaining health and welfare. Learners will competently and proficiently demonstrate incubation and hatchery of game birds as part of effective game management. Learners will independently justify the logical decisions taken during the planning of game bird breeding and management with efficient, accurate identification of problems and solutions in managing stock birds. Learners will thoroughly evaluate the effectiveness of the process of breeding management, which includes evaluation of initial planning, comprehensive plans and practical breeding projects with game birds, making recommendations for improvement at all stages of the process. Learners will demonstrate an entirely competent level of knowledge, understanding and skills development in incubation and hatchery operations, how to manage animal welfare and hygiene, and how to assess the factors that affect the health and welfare of game birds.

For merit standard, learners will produce a clear, efficient plan for game bird breeding and rearing, maintaining health and welfare, and competently and proficiently demonstrating incubation and hatchery of game birds as part of effective game management. Learners will justify the decisions taken during the planning of game bird breeding and management with clear, correct identification of problems and solutions in managing stock birds. Learners will demonstrate a competent level of knowledge, understanding and skills development in incubation and hatchery operations, how to manage animal welfare and hygiene, and how to assess the factors that affect the health and welfare of game birds.

For pass standard, learners will produce a realistic, appropriate plan for game bird breeding and rearing, maintaining health and welfare, and competently demonstrating the planning and process of incubation and hatchery of game birds as part of effective game management. Learners will demonstrate a competent level of knowledge, understanding and skills development in incubation and hatchery operations, how to manage animal welfare and hygiene, and how to assess the factors that affect the health and welfare of game birds. There will be no critical omissions in learners' plans or in the knowledge and skills demonstrated in relation to incubation and hatchery operations. However, in some aspects, learners' application of their knowledge and skills might be limited in scope.

Learning aim C

For distinction standard, learners will independently and efficiently carry out activities as part of sustainable gamekeeping, relevant to specific environments both upland and lowland, providing evidence of tasks completed to manage game and the environment sustainably. Learners will give comprehensive, convincing evaluations of the impact that different types of native and non-native species have, and the effectiveness of the management of wildlife and game in designated areas. Learners will show detailed consideration of both positive and negative aspects. Learners will demonstrate thorough knowledge and competent practical skills in performing a survey of native and non-native species in a local habitat as part of the gamekeeper's role, explaining and measuring the key types of game species and their impact on habitats. Relevant concepts and practices of sustainability to manage and maintain the countryside will be discussed with breadth and depth, and linked specifically to effective gamekeeping practice. Learners will provide and justify multiple robust solutions at all times. Learners will use relevant and accurate terminology throughout their evidence to support a considered, comprehensive response.

For merit standard, learners will efficiently carry out activities as part of sustainable gamekeeping, relevant to specific environments both upland and lowland, providing evidence of tasks completed to manage game and the environment sustainably. Learners will clearly justify their consideration of the impact that different types of native and non-native species have on habitats, and the effectiveness of management of wildlife and game in designated areas. Learners will analyse the issues in a way that is balanced and mostly relevant, with some justification of both positive and negative aspects. Learners will demonstrate knowledge and competent practical skills in performing a survey of native and non-native species in a local habitat, explaining the key types of game species and their impact on habitats. Relevant concepts and practices of sustainability to manage and maintain the countryside will be discussed with breadth of understanding that is linked appropriately to effective gamekeeping practice. Learners will produce efficient solutions at all times. Learners will use appropriate technical language in their evidence, but this may be inconsistent.

For pass standard, learners will explore the wider role and impact of sustainable practices on gamekeeping, showing realistic explanations and some evidence of relevant reasoning. Learners will consider the impact that different types of native and non-native species have on habitats, and the effectiveness of management of wildlife and game in designated areas. Learners will explain both positive and negative aspects, although their explanations might be limited or unbalanced in parts. Learners will demonstrate knowledge and competent practical skills in performing a survey of native and non-native species as part of a gamekeeper's role in a local habitat, explaining the key types of game species and their impact on habitats. Concepts and practices of sustainability to manage and maintain the countryside will be discussed with some relevance to effective gamekeeping, and will be limited in breadth and depth, using some technical language.

There will be no critical omissions in the knowledge and skills demonstrated in relation to the survey. However, in some aspects, learners' application of their knowledge and skills might be unbalanced or limited in scope.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management
- Unit 12: Controlling Countryside Pests and Predators.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 14: Countryside Recreation

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners produce management plans for countryside recreational activities, accounting for the needs of countryside organisations and the natural environment.

Unit introduction

Countryside management is becoming increasingly complex, as countryside organisations take account of the growing population with leisure time to spend using countryside amenities. Countryside organisations and the people who work in them must balance the social and economic benefits of countryside recreation, such as health promotion and income, with the careful management of natural resources, including consideration of conservation aims and environmental sustainability. Providing suitable recreational activities and amenities that meet the sometimes conflicting needs of customers, users, income-generating organisations and the natural environment, is a complex and challenging task.

In this unit, you will explore the varied activities that take place in the UK countryside and their benefits to users and countryside organisations. You will learn how to select and plan appropriate activities, accounting for the effects of visitors and the activities on the local environment and population. You will investigate organisations that are involved in managing access to the countryside, the rules and laws that apply to using the countryside for recreation, and the essential processes involved in promoting, managing and monitoring the success of countryside recreation activities. To complete the assessment tasks in this unit, you will need to draw on your learning from across your programme.

You will select and apply your knowledge and skills from the following units: *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities*; *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science*; *Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities*; *Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats*; and *Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management*. You will also use your experience of real work practices in the sector that you gained in *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

This unit gives you the preparation you need if you want to progress directly to employment in a role such as events management assistant, assistant site manager, experience manager for a countryside or conservation organisation and countryside ranger. The unit will also help you to progress to a higher education course such as a degree in rural resource management or ecology, or to a foundation degree course in an area such as conservation management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Examine countryside features and visitor use to manage the impact of recreational activities on local populations and the environment
- B** Explore the management processes used by countryside organisations to create successful recreational activities
- C** Produce management plans for countryside recreation activities to meet the needs of countryside organisations.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Examine countryside features and visitor use to manage the impact of recreational activities on local populations and the environment	A1 Physical characteristics of the countryside A2 Countryside activities and visitors A3 Impact of countryside activities	A report on recreational activities and visitors in a given countryside location.
B Explore the management processes used by countryside organisations to create successful recreational activities	B1 Practices involved in managing recreational activities B2 Measures of success in countryside recreational activities	Case-study reviews of the management of countryside recreational activities.
C Produce management plans for countryside recreation activities to meet the needs of countryside organisations	C1 Suitability of sites for recreational activities C2 Regulation and legislation C3 Promotion of activities C4 Management plans	Plans and accompanying rationale for delivery of recreational activities in the countryside. Learners will be expected to select and apply learning from other mandatory units and optional units as appropriate.

Content

Learning aim A: Examine countryside features and visitor use to manage the impact of recreational activities on local populations and the environment

A1 Physical characteristics of the countryside

Features of the countryside and the ways in which they affect its use for particular types of recreation and tourism.

- Geographical location, to include designated areas, e.g. Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), Areas of Outstanding Natural Beauty (AONBs).
- Physical site features:
 - existing access to sites
 - existing conservation interests
 - soil
 - slopes
 - topography
 - trees and woodland
 - water bodies.

A2 Countryside activities and visitors

- Organisations that may be involved in countryside recreational activities:
 - government departments, e.g. Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra)
 - charities and conservation organisations, e.g. National Trust, Woodland Trust, Forestry Commission
 - local bodies, e.g. county and parish councils.
- Characteristics, requirements, potential scale, human and physical resources required for countryside recreational activities:
 - nature-based countryside recreational activities, e.g. national parks and gardens, observing wildlife, survival skills
 - heritage and cultural attractions, e.g. castles and stately homes, concerts and festivals
 - adventure activities, e.g. canoeing, paintballing and mountain biking
 - sporting activities, e.g. shooting, fishing and hunting
 - other activities, e.g. country shows, health and wellbeing retreats, horse riding.
- Visiting purposes and factors affecting decisions to visit the countryside:
 - visitor types, e.g. local, national or international, day trippers or holidaymakers
 - individual visitors and groups, e.g. school groups, hen and stag parties, sportspeople
 - visitor frequency, e.g. regular, school holidays, seasonal
 - location and access, e.g. public transport, roads and parking.

A3 Impact of countryside activities

Positive and negative consequences of visitors to the countryside on natural resources, infrastructure, local inhabitants and others involved in countryside recreational activities.

- Economic:
 - development of local tourist industry, including job creation
 - increased income for local area, e.g. restaurants, hotels and shops
 - diversification of income for farmers and farmland owners
 - work of conservation organisations.

- Social impacts for local inhabitants and countryside stewards:
 - diversification of environment
 - impact of seasonal employment
 - effects of increased traffic and visitor numbers at peak visiting times, e.g. roadways, sewerage and cleanliness of facilities
 - visitor behaviour, e.g. contributions to local issues, or antisocial behaviour such as uncontrolled dogs
 - effect of holiday homes on availability and cost of local property
 - visual impact of tourist attractions and accommodation.
- Environmental:
 - care and maintenance of environment
 - construction and development of activities and supporting facilities, e.g. parking, shops, visitor centres
 - habitat destruction
 - pollution
 - erosion of pathways
 - change to environmental aesthetics.

Learning aim B: Explore the management processes used by countryside organisations to create successful recreational activities

B1 Practices involved in managing recreational activities

Alternative approaches, advantages and disadvantages of implementing different systems to plan for and deliver countryside recreational activities as appropriate to organisation size, aims and resources.

- Planning processes:
 - working as part of a team, e.g. team roles, responsibilities and interaction
 - project timescales and deadlines
 - contingency planning.
- Booking processes:
 - points of contact and information for potential visitors
 - payment options
 - recording of visitor information.
- Physical resources:
 - venues and equipment
 - organisation of transport, refreshments, toilet facilities.
- Human resources, e.g. instructors, stewards, customer service representatives.
- Recording and monitoring systems and processes:
 - activity timings
 - staff deployment and time sheets
 - complaints handling.

B2 Measures of success in countryside recreational activities

Collection and use of information and data to review the planning and delivery of countryside recreational activities against predetermined success measures according to organisations of different types, sizes and aims.

- Businesses and other organisations that may deliver countryside recreational activities:
 - sole traders and partnerships
 - charities and clubs
 - council and government.
- Principles of SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, threats) analysis for organisations delivering activities.

- Customer satisfaction and matching customer need and expectation with provision, e.g. customer surveys, feedback sheets, online feedback.
- Effective deployment of staff.
- Contribution to the local economy.
- Financial profit, reinvestment and potential for development.
- Management of natural resources, e.g. monitoring of habitats.
- Effectiveness of planning processes and impact on delivery.

Learning aim C: Produce management plans for countryside recreation activities to meet the needs of countryside organisations

In planning the management of countryside activities, learners must select and apply learning from across the mandatory content of the qualification.

C1 Suitability of sites for recreational activities

Factors affecting the selection of countryside recreational activities.

- Logistical considerations:
 - permissions for use of land
 - availability of equipment and instructors
 - transport links and signage.
- Financial considerations:
 - cost of using site, e.g. ownership and access
 - costs of providing facilities and activities
 - potential profits from providing activities.

C2 Regulation and legislation

Impact of legislation and regulation on managing recreational activities in the countryside as appropriate to the planned activities.

- Current guidance and legislation, e.g. The Countryside Code, Countryside and Rights of Way Act 2000, Equality Act 2010, National Heritage Act 2002, National Parks and Access to the Countryside Act 1949, Occupiers' Liability Act 1957 and Occupiers Liability Act 1984.
- Responsibilities of employers, to include compliance with the Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974; Reporting of Injuries, Diseases and Dangerous Occurrences Regulations (RIDDOR) 1995, Data Protection Act 1998.
- Local planning restrictions and requirements, e.g. licensing, planning permission for signage, traffic management.
- Safety procedures, to include:
 - production of risk assessments
 - licensing requirements of adventure activities
 - safety checks of premises and equipment
 - public and employer's liability insurance.

C3 Promotion of activities

Methods, use and effectiveness of promoting countryside recreational activities.

- Paper-based promotional material, to include leaflets, posters, business cards, advertising in publications.
- Use of technology, to include websites, social media, promotional videos.
- Rural and tourism business networking organisations.
- Event presence, e.g. open days, promotion stands.
- Creation of and access to databases of potential users for direct marketing.

C4 Management plans

Key considerations in planning countryside recreation activities.

- Aims and objectives.
- Research, including user demand, opinions of local population, environmental impact.
- Resourcing to include staffing; land resources; physical resources, e.g. equipment, signage; user needs, e.g. toilets, food, medical provision; finance.
- Timing and scheduling.
- Success measures.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Examine countryside features and visitor use to manage the impact of recreational activities on local populations and the environment		A.D1 Evaluate the use of the countryside for recreational activities.
<p>A.P1 Explain the links between countryside characteristics and visitor recreational activities.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain the impact of using the countryside for recreational activities.</p>	<p>A.M1 Analyse the factors affecting recreational activities in the countryside.</p>	
Learning aim B: Explore the management processes used by countryside organisations to create successful recreational activities		B.D2 Evaluate factors affecting the successful management of contrasting countryside recreation activities undertaken by different organisations.
<p>B.P3 Explain success measures for contrasting countryside recreation activities.</p> <p>B.P4 Explain areas of strength and weakness in the management of contrasting countryside recreation activities for different countryside organisations.</p>	<p>B.M2 Analyse management strategies used by different organisations for contrasting countryside recreation activities.</p>	
Learning aim C: Produce management plans for countryside recreation activities to meet the needs of countryside organisations		C.D3 Produce comprehensive management plans for countryside recreation activities that meet the needs of a selected countryside organisation, giving detailed evidence of reasoned decision-making processes.
<p>C.P5 Produce management plans for countryside recreation activities that meet the needs of a selected countryside organisation.</p> <p>C.P6 Explain management planning decisions for countryside recreation activities.</p>	<p>C.M3 Produce detailed management plans for countryside recreation activities that meet the needs of a selected countryside organisation.</p> <p>C.M4 Analyse the impact of management planning decisions on the success of countryside recreation activities.</p>	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of three summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim A: (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aim B: (B.P3, B.P4, B.M2, B.D2)

Learning aim C: (C.P5, C.P6, C.M3, C.M4, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

There are no special resources required for this unit.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will give a comprehensive account of the impact of a wide range of factors on a given area of countryside, such as the recreational activities available for visitors, visitor types and likelihood of participation. They will make well-reasoned and balanced judgements on a number of different activity types, considering advantages and disadvantages to environmental, economic and social features of the local area and community. The report will demonstrate a high quality of written communication throughout, with supporting evidence well integrated.

For merit standard, learners will consider an area of countryside in a detailed manner, carefully examining each of the factors that affect its use for recreational activities. This will include consideration of the types of recreational activities that are available, the intended visitors, the features of the area that lend themselves towards delivery of these activities, and the challenges that may be faced by local organisations. The report will be well structured and demonstrate a good quality of written communication.

For pass standard, learners will give a limited account of the types of activities that are available in a given area of countryside and the types of visitors that make use of them. They will show an understanding of the factors that affect the use of the countryside for recreation, but will make use of limited supporting evidence.

Learning aim B

For distinction standard, learners will give a comprehensive account of the challenges facing different organisations in the delivery of contrasting activities, and the strengths of the organisations in meeting these challenges. They will address each of the success measures outlined in the unit content and make reference to the degree of relevance each has to the business or organisation. They will scrutinise the degree to which the activities have been delivered successfully, suggesting steps that could be taken to improve the viability of the activities and natural resource management. Learners will comment on how reasonable and practical it is to implement these suggestions, with final recommendations put forward that could be usefully put into place. Learners may support their evaluation with reference to practices demonstrated by other providers.

For merit standard, learners will give a considered account of different organisations and their management of contrasting countryside recreation activities, which could include factors such as the type and size of organisation, location of activities and site accessibility. They will examine the management strategies relating to the planning and promoting of the activities, and the environmental impacts of delivering activities. Learners will examine the management strategies in relation to the success of the activities, using success measures detailed in the unit content. Learners will present work that is coherent and logically structured.

For pass standard, learners will use the success measures referenced in the unit content to explore how far the management of contrasting countryside recreation activities can, by different organisations, be considered as successful. They will identify the areas of strength that have been demonstrated by each of the organisations, along with the areas that require improvement, expanding on the reasons why they have identified these points. Learners will demonstrate awareness of different types of countryside recreation activity, such as water-based, land-based or event-based. The activities reviewed do not need direct comparisons.

Learning aim C

In completing the assessment for learning aim C, learners must individually produce management plans for countryside recreation activities. They are required to independently select, apply and demonstrate appropriate knowledge and skills from across the mandatory content of the qualification. Teachers should ensure that the management planning activities carried out by learners give sufficient scope for them to complete the assessment fully.

For distinction standard, learners will make logically developed and comprehensive plans addressing fully considered contributory factors relating to complex activities. They will carefully consider the logistics and organisation required to carry out the activities, demonstrating explicit reference to success measures required by countryside organisations. This is likely to include 'mock-ups' of promotional material that could be used. Learners will put forward arguments to support the approaches they used and justify the decisions they made, demonstrating an excellent understanding of the requirements for each stage of planning and promotion.

For merit standard, learners will produce detailed management plans for more complex activities, such as those involving large numbers of visitors and/or multiple interrelated activities that may be inherently more complex, for example those requiring more rigorous attention to regulation or legislation issues. Their planning will be based on appropriate research of the activities that considers the multiple factors involved and their interrelation throughout the duration of the activities. Learners will specify the practical planning that must be carried out to comply with necessary regulation and legislation. Learners will provide reasoning as to why planning and promotion is integral to the success of activities, demonstrating a sound understanding of the key principles involved.

For pass standard, learners will produce workable management plans for different countryside recreation activities attended by multiple visitors. They will make sensible observations about the suitability of the site, requirements for staffing, equipment, safety and the need for insurance. They will consider the importance of compliance with regulation and legislation. Learners will produce their plans in line with appropriate success measures required by countryside organisations. They will demonstrate an understanding of the relationship between careful planning and promotion of the activities, smooth delivery and a good customer experience.

Links to other units

This unit should be completed towards the end of the programme. In order to complete the synoptic assessment tasks in this unit, learners should select and apply the relevant knowledge and skills from other areas of the mandatory content. Learners should build on their knowledge of the health and safety of people in the countryside from *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities*; the nature and health of environmental resources from *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science*; grounds and estates management requirements from *Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities*; management and protection of biodiversity from *Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats*; and conservation and ecological management activities from *Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management*.

Additionally, learners will have completed *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors* and will be able to apply their experience of and insight into real working practices in the sector.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local countryside organisation staff as mentors
- access to management planning strategies and processes.

Unit 15: Managing a Shoot

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners investigate the requirements for the successful management of a shoot, developing plans for a shooting season and a shoot day.

Unit introduction

Shooting in the UK today mainly consists of species of game birds, deer and competition shooting. In particular, pheasant is shot on large, traditional driven shoots on estates and small-scale rough shoots. The effective management of shoot days is a key aspect of the shoot industry, whether this be for game or competition shoots.

In this unit, you will investigate the elements that contribute to a successful, safe shooting season, which is the culmination of the gamekeeper's year. Driven shoot days are the mainstay of the industry, and one of the most important aspects of a gamekeeper's role is to provide a safe, enjoyable day's sport for their 'guns'. You will develop skills in practical, management and administrative tasks that need to be carried out in order to host a successful day's shooting.

This unit will help you move directly to employment in roles such as gamekeeper or countryside ranger, having developed a broad range of relevant knowledge, understanding and skills. It will also help you to progress to further or higher education in conservation or wildlife management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate the key requirements for a successful shooting season
- B** Produce a plan for a shooting season
- C** Produce a briefing plan for a shoot day.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate the key requirements for a successful shooting season	A1 Purpose of shooting seasons and shoot days A2 Use of resources A3 Game management A4 Drives and cover crops	A plan for a shooting season for a commonly shot species of animal, including a report on the role of effective resource management in maximising shoot days and land sustainability.
B Produce a plan for a shooting season	B1 Finances B2 Shooting and hunting arrangements B3 Recording and documentation	
C Produce a briefing plan for a shoot day	C1 Pre-shoot briefings C2 Gamekeeper's shoot briefings C3 Firearm safety	A pre-shoot briefing, shoot briefing and risk assessment for one shoot day for a given species and season.

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate the key requirements for a successful shooting season

A1 Purpose of shooting seasons and shoot days

- Types of shoot days that comprise a shooting season, including clay, archery, game and competition shooting.
- Objectives of sporting enterprises involved with shoot days.
- Developing targets for the shooting season and shoot days.
- Long- and short-term shooting potential.

A2 Use of resources

- Equipment, including vehicles, guns, safety equipment, clothing.
- Finance, including costing and pricing for shoot days, wages and payment in produce.
- Staffing requirements, e.g. number of gamekeepers and beaters for the shoot.
- Care and training of working dogs, including maintaining welfare on shoot days, training requirements and care of dogs on shoots.
- Services, including contracted-out shoot management.
- Other estate activities relevant to the shooting season, including commercial events that generate revenue, competition shoots, selling of game meat.

A3 Game management

- Estimation of numbers for wild game, reared game, released game.
- Effective positioning of release sites.
- Topography of land.
- Potential drives and hazards to game.
- Management plans, to include health and safety requirements and current legislation and codes of practice, sustainable practices.
- Game bird release programme, including objectives, targets, timing, resources, systems, facilities, and policies and procedures.
- Considerations for game bird release:
 - estate features, including topography of land, locality to residential areas and public access routes
 - game requirements, including habitat, feed, water, and the need to maintain high standards of welfare
 - causes and management of disruptive factors, including environmental conditions, pests, predators, diseases, human interruption, relevant current legislation and codes of practice
 - health and safety, risk assessments.

A4 Drives and cover crops

- Drives, including position and number of drives.
- Common cover crops and their respective uses and value, including brassicas and legumes.
- Layout and management of cover strips, e.g. woodland, hedges and shelterbelts.
- Role of conservation grants in providing funding for planting cover crops.
- Practices for sustainable land management during shooting seasons.

Learning aim B: Produce a plan for a shooting season**B1 Finances**

Finances for running a shooting season.

- Costs, including shooting rights, rental contracts prices, price of establishing and managing game and cover crops, maintenance costs, feed costs and fuel.
- Income, including sale of let days, syndicate agreements, sale of shot game.
- Cash flow.
- Working within a given budget.
- Financial implications of outbreak of disease in game.
- Financial impact of environmental factors affecting shoot days, e.g. flooding, prolonged drought, adverse weather.
- Generating income through marketing strategies.

B2 Shooting and hunting arrangements

- Different types of contracts and their use, including:
 - shoot day insurance, e.g. public liability
 - health and safety policies and claims
 - shoot days
 - syndicates
 - employment
 - rental agreements for land, woodland and shooting rights.
- Risk assessments.
- Firearms and shotgun certificates and visitor permits.
- Current legislative requirements for shooting, hunting and use of guns.
- Invitations to shoot and expenses involved.
- Gamekeeper responsibilities, including what can be hunted or shot, when it can be done, equipment that must be used.
- Shooting and hunting seasons for game birds, mammals and fish species in the UK.

B3 Recording and documentation

- Recording key performance indicators, including percentage return, number of shoot days, mortalities throughout rearing and releasing, game sales and return birds.
- Relevant current legislation and codes of practice.
- Using appropriate format to record required information.

Learning aim C: Produce a briefing plan for a shoot day**C1 Pre-shoot briefings**

- Communications with participants before attending the shoot.
- Information to participants, including:
 - location, parking and access information
 - accommodation availability
 - vehicle requirements, e.g. off-road 4×4
 - refreshment provision on the day
 - walking required to pegs
 - number and type of cartridges required, e.g. fibre or plastic wads, non-toxic shot for duck
 - overage/underage policy
 - payment and insurance requirements, e.g. shoot cancellation insurance.

- Customer requirements before and on the day, including:
 - driven – shotgun, sleeve, cartridges, cartridge bag, hearing protection, coat, hat, gloves, footwear, seat
 - walking – shotgun, cartridges, cartridge belt, game bag or loops for belt, hearing protection, footwear, waterproofs
 - with dog – water, bowl, feed, towel, lead and spare, peg, whistle
 - health and safety requirements.

C2 Gamekeeper's shoot briefings

- Briefing clients for the day, e.g. greet and host on arrival, introductions to the shoot team, health and safety awareness, weather, game to shoot, brace allocations.
- Briefing shoot team members on the day, including beaters, flankers, gamekeeper, pickers up, stops and followers.
- Use of gamekeeper's shoot plan.
- Follow up and despatch, including actions to take in circumstances of well or poorly placed shot, use of dogs.
- Action to take in event of injured guns or dogs.
- Health and safety while on shoot.

C3 Firearm safety

- Steps to take to ensure safety on shoot days, including:
 - muzzle awareness
 - carrying a shotgun in a slip
 - awareness of the direction in which the muzzle of your shotgun is pointing and ensuring it is never aimed in an unsafe direction
 - checking gun status, e.g. unloaded or not
 - types of cartridges that are safe to use in the guns
 - carrying a shotgun out of a slip
 - passing a shotgun to someone
 - crossing an obstacle on your own and with others
 - shooting safely according to standard codes of practice set by industry bodies, and legal requirements.
- Handling and checking the shotgun.
- Cartridges, including cartridge type and shot size suitability for purpose and gun, storage of cartridges and dealing with a misfire.
- First-aid requirements.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate the key requirements for a successful shooting season		
<p>A.P1 Plan the use of relevant resources for a shooting season.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain how effective management of game, drives and cover crops improve shoot days and land sustainability.</p>	<p>A.M1 Analyse the use of relevant resources for a shooting season.</p> <p>A.M2 Analyse the role of effective management of game, drives, cover crops and other relevant resources in improving shoot days and land sustainability.</p>	
Learning aim B: Produce a plan for a shooting season		<p>A.D1 Evaluate the significance of effective management of game, drives, cover crops and other relevant resources in improving shoot days and land sustainability.</p> <p>B.D2 Produce a plan for a shooting season, to industry standard, evaluating the financial feasibility of the plan.</p>
<p>B.P3 Produce a basic plan for a shooting season.</p> <p>B.P4 Discuss the financial feasibility of the plan for the shooting season.</p>	<p>B.M3 Produce a complex plan for a shooting season.</p> <p>B.M4 Analyse the financial feasibility of the plan for the shooting season.</p>	
Learning aim C: Produce a briefing plan for a shoot day		<p>C.D3 Produce a pre-shoot briefing, shoot briefing and common firearms risk assessment to industry standard, for a shoot day.</p>
<p>C.P5 Produce a basic pre-shoot briefing and shoot briefing for a shoot day.</p> <p>C.P6 Produce a risk assessment for common firearms involved in a shoot day.</p>	<p>C.M5 Produce a complex pre-shoot briefing, shoot briefing and common firearms risk assessment for a shoot day.</p>	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aims: A and B (A.P1, A.P2, B.P3, B.P4, A.M1, A.M2, B.M3, B.M4, A.D1, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M5, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to professional shooting enterprises for learners to attend shoot days.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aims A and B

For distinction standard, learners will produce a robust shooting season plan to industry standard. The plan will deal effectively with human and financial resources. Learners must show breadth and depth of understanding of the fundamental knowledge required for shooting, along with the requirements for comprehensive, efficient recording and documentation of activities. Learners must show that they are capable of researching key elements and evaluating a range of entirely relevant resources, which should include those listed in the content section. Learners will make specific, convincing connections between physical resources, legal requirements and the impact on financial feasibility to industry standards. The evidence will also include a well-reasoned emphasis on the importance of shoot days as the mainstay of the shooting season. Learners will provide a comprehensive, robust appraisal of all aspects required for planning, running and managing a shooting season both successfully and safely. This will include an insightful consideration of sustainability and the role of sustainable practices in the effective planning of shoot management.

Learners will plan resources relevant to a shooting season accurately, selecting those in the unit content and considering thoroughly the impact of using such resources in a season. Learners will give reasoned evidence in relation to how effective game bird release and integrated planning of drives and cover crops will maximise the success of a shoot, making accurate connections to sustainable land management in line with industry standards. Learners will consistently apply in-depth understanding to demonstrate an entirely valid and sustainable approach to shooting. The evidence will make use of specific, accurate terminology throughout.

For merit standard, learners will produce a complex plan for a shooting season, including specific human and financial resources as part of a sound, logical plan for a shooting season. Learners must show breadth and some depth of the key knowledge required for shooting, along with the requirements for correct, detailed recording and documentation of activities. Learners must show that they are capable of using a complex range of relevant resources, which should include those listed in the content section. Their assessment will be clear and logical, making mostly relevant connections between physical resources, legal requirements and financial implications. There will be clear, balanced consideration of shoot days as a key indicator of success in a shooting season. Learners will demonstrate breadth of knowledge in analysing all aspects required for running and managing a shooting season both successfully and safely, including a clear understanding of the role of sustainable practices in the planning of shoot management.

Learners will accurately identify and consider the merits of resources relevant to a shoot, selecting those in the unit content and considering the impact of using such resources in a shooting season. Learners will demonstrate understanding of the relationship between game bird release and integrated planning of drives and cover crops to maximise the success of a shoot and contribute to sustainable land management. At all times, learners will demonstrate breadth and application of knowledge and understanding, and a realistic and mostly sustainable approach to shooting. The evidence will show use of specific, accurate terminology.

For pass standard, learners will produce a realistic but limited plan for a shoot season, including the appropriate human and financial resources that require consideration. Learners will demonstrate the key knowledge required for shoot management, along with the key requirements for recording and documentation of activities for a shoot season. Learners should make reference to a range of resources, which should include those listed in the content section. Learners will identify some relevant connections between physical resources, legal requirements and financial implications. There will be realistic but limited consideration of shoot days as a key indicator of success in a shooting season. Learners must demonstrate competent planning skills, supported by the use of some relevant examples. Learners will cover all the key aspects required for running and managing a shooting season both successfully and safely, including a realistic understanding of the role of sustainable practices in the planning of shoot management. Their understanding of these key aspects is likely to be limited in scope.

Learners will demonstrate some relevant knowledge and understanding through their research of the key elements in game bird release, and the planning of drives and cover crops. Learners will give a realistic, limited explanation of how game bird release, drives and cover crops are used to maximise the success of a shoot and encourage sustainable land management. The evidence will demonstrate generic or limited links between the different aspects of good shoot management practices. Learners will make some use of relevant terminology.

Learning aim C

For distinction standard, learners will produce a convincing pre-shoot briefing, shoot day briefing and common firearms risk assessment to meet industry standards. They will show an in-depth, accurate understanding of the overriding importance of safety in the running of any shooting activity effectively. Learners will demonstrate both breadth and depth of knowledge and understanding of common firearms and how these are used safely. They will demonstrate a thorough understanding of how to communicate this information effectively to shoot participants before and on the day of a shoot. Learners will show effective skills in carrying out risk assessments required for shooting activities. They will complete a risk assessment in a comprehensive and detailed manner, with significant levels of accuracy. The evidence will make use of specific, accurate terminology throughout.

For merit standard, learners will produce a complex pre-shoot briefing, shoot briefing and common firearms risk assessment. They will show a clear, developed understanding of the importance of safety in the running of any shooting activity, but will lack some depth in their wider understanding. Learners will demonstrate clarity and accuracy in the knowledge and understanding of common firearms, how these are used safely and how to communicate this information clearly to shoot participants before and on the day of a shoot. Learners will show efficient and accurate skills in risk assessing shooting activities. The evidence will show use of specific and accurate terminology.

For pass standard, learners will produce a basic pre-shoot briefing, shoot day briefing and common firearms risk assessment, which contain all the key requirements. They will demonstrate a realistic understanding of the importance of safety in the running of any shooting activity. Learners will explain and plan for one pre-shoot and shoot briefing, including other considerations for a shoot day, with some breadth and relevance. Learners will have developed a realistic, limited understanding of the importance of clear and accurate communication during shoot activities. They will demonstrate appropriate, accurate risk assessment of the use of common firearms for game bird shooting on a shoot day to ensure a shoot that is both safe and successful. The evidence will show some use of relevant terminology.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Practices
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors
- Unit 13: Gamekeeping
- Unit 20: Working Dogs.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 16: Water Quality Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills to carry out water quality inspections, understand the factors related to water quality and produce a water quality report.

Unit introduction

Water is essential to human life and the health of the environment. As a valuable natural resource, it comprises marine, estuarine, freshwater (river and lakes) and groundwater environments that stretch across coastal and inland areas. Water quality is commonly defined by its physical, chemical, biological and aesthetic (appearance and smell) characteristics. Maintaining good water quality is important as water is a valuable asset and used in numerous forms, including drinking, recreation, wildlife habitats, scientific study, industrial, shipping, farming and irrigation. Therefore, surveying, managing and treating water to ensure good quality is an important part of any habitat management plan.

In this unit, you will focus on the physical, chemical and biological factors influencing water quality. You will learn water treatment methodology and processes. You will develop practical water assessment skills to enable you to competently carry out water surveys and sampling tests, and subsequent final report writing.

This unit will help you prepare for employment in a number of roles such as assistant park ranger and trainee warden. You could also progress to higher education courses such as in marine biology or ecology and wildlife conservation.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Examine the impact of physical, chemical and biological factors on water quality
- B** Explore methods used in water treatments to improve water quality
- C** Carry out sampling and analysis of water to provide data for quality management.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Examine the impact of physical, chemical and biological factors on water quality	A1 Physical factors A2 Chemical and biological factors A3 Impacts of human activity	An illustrated report exploring the physical, chemical and biological factors that influence water quality.
B Explore methods used in water treatments to improve water quality	B1 Water quality measurement B2 Water treatment	A portfolio of evidence for water quality surveys, analysis and treatment suggestions, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • survey methodology • evidence of practical water survey tasks • coverage of health and safety and legislation • water treatment suggestions/plan.
C Carry out sampling and analysis of water to provide data for quality management	C1 Practical water surveys C2 Legislation and health and safety C3 Water quality reporting	

Content

Learning aim A: Examine the impact of physical, chemical and biological factors on water quality

A1 Physical factors

The nature of structures and processes that affect water quality.

- The hydrological cycle.
- Geographical features, e.g. glacial melt, erosion, valleys.
- Surface topography, including shape, feature, lay, surface roughness, surface waviness.

A2 Chemical and biological factors

- Impact of chemicals on water quality:
 - chemicals, to include chlorine, nitrates and nitrites, dissolved oxygen, chlorine, ammonia, carbon dioxide, phosphates
 - water pH, water temperature, water turbidity
 - suspended solids
 - water hardness – temporary, permanent.
- Biological factors that influence water quality:
 - presence of aquatic organisms
 - biological oxygen demand within ecosystem
 - presence of micro-organisms
 - flora and fauna within the ecosystem.

A3 Impacts of human activity

The impact of human activity on water quality and aquatic species.

- Construction and use of physical structures, e.g. dams, artificial lakes.
- Introduction of non-native species.
- Fish farming.
- Pollution, to include:
 - agricultural run-off
 - industrial pollution
 - rubbish and marine debris.
- Commercial shipping, and recreational boating and water use.
- Impact on coastal and inland species, e.g. aquatic plants, invertebrates, marine mammals, fish and water birds.

Learning aim B: Explore methods used in water treatments to improve water quality

B1 Water quality measurement

Approaches and effectiveness of methods and equipment used in the assessment and testing of water quality.

- Physical factors: temperature through the use of probes, turbidity through the use of light meters, colour, salinity, suspended solids, dissolved solids, flow through the use of meters.
- Chemical:
 - pH, dissolved oxygen; nutrients, including nitrogen and phosphorus, organic and inorganic compounds
 - use of test kits to assess dissolved oxygen, pH, ammonia, nitrite, nitrate, hardness, chlorine, salinity.

- Biological:
 - bacteria present and levels, algae
 - use of test kits, probes, kick sampling, nets, indicator species
 - basic biological sampling methods, e.g. for invertebrates, vertebrates, macrophytes, algae, microbiological testing.

B2 Water treatment

Processes, advantages and disadvantages of methods used in the treatment of poor-quality water.

- Methodology and processes:
 - aeration, ion exchange, sedimentation, biological filtration, solids removal, activated sludge techniques, UV treatment
 - ozonisation – chemical disinfectant
 - nitrogen and phosphorus removal
 - algal control, e.g. via bacteria.
- Sequence of treatment.

Learning aim C: Carry out sampling and analysis of water to provide data for quality management

C1 Practical water surveys

Testing processes, methods and equipment used to assess water quality.

- Record keeping – weather, disease treatments, husbandry factors.
- Physical and chemical quality sampling:
 - temperature – thermometer
 - phosphate – phosphate test tablet
 - salinity – electrical conductivity meter
 - pH – pH meter
 - colour – chart/description
 - turbidity – turbidity tube
 - chemical – pH, biological oxygen demand (BOD) test, nutrients
 - dissolved oxygen – dissolved oxygen kit
 - nitrogen – nitrate test tablet.
- Biological sampling, including:
 - bacteria – petri dish
 - faecal bacteria Coliscan® easygel kit.
- Field test equipment used in the industry:
 - water testing guides and charts, covering limits, frequency, site, method, actions
 - titrimetric drop tests, micro-titrators
 - colourimetric via comparator, photometer
 - dip slides
 - incubators.
- Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) meters.

C2 Legislation and health and safety

Factors to consider when carrying out water surveys.

- Safe practice when collecting water samples, including personal protective equipment (PPE), e.g. gloves, masks, waders.
- Risk assessments.
- Safety checks, including toxicity levels.
- Environmental quality standards (Environment Agency).
- River Invertebrate Prediction and Classification System (RIVPACS).
- Relevant current legislation, e.g. Environment Act 1995.

C3 Water quality reporting

Conventions and formats used for water quality reporting.

- Report structure: title, aims and objectives, method, results, discussion, conclusion, including recommendations.
- Presentation of data.
- Citations and references, e.g. bibliography, footnotes, Harvard referencing.
- Reporting language, e.g. academic language; use of symbols, use of abbreviations.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Examine the impact of physical, chemical and biological factors on water quality		A.D1 Evaluate the impact of physical, chemical and biological factors, and human activity, on water quality and aquatic species.
A.P1 Explain the processes involved in the hydrological cycle. A.P2 Explain the effect of chemical and biological factors, and human activity, on water quality and aquatic species.	A.M1 Analyse how physical, chemical and biological factors, and human activity, affect water quality and aquatic species.	
Learning aim B: Explore methods used in water treatments to improve water quality		B.D2 Evaluate the effectiveness of water quality measurement and treatment methods. C.D3 Perform complex water quality surveys on aquatic habitats, producing comprehensive reports providing evidence of findings and giving reasoned recommendations for water quality treatments.
B.P3 Explain methods and approaches used to measure water quality. B.P4 Explain water treatment methods used to improve water quality.	B.M2 Assess methods used to measure water quality and the effectiveness of treatment methods.	
Learning aim C: Carry out sampling and analysis of water to provide data for quality management		
C.P5 Perform simple water quality surveys for aquatic habitats safely. C.P6 Produce a report on the findings of own water quality survey.	C.M3 Perform complex water quality surveys for aquatic habitats, reporting detailed findings and analysis of results.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- aquatic habitats
- testing equipment, e.g. PPE for use in laboratories and in the field, a range of dissolved oxygen meters, thermometers and chemical test kits, water sampling equipment, basic water flow measurement equipment
- record-keeping equipment and a calculator.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners discuss the hydrological cycle, and the impact of physical, chemical, biological and human influences on two contrasting bodies of water and two aquatic species.

For distinction standard, learners will give a comprehensive, accurate account of the processes involved in the hydrological cycle, and the impact these have on water quality. Their account will include accurate and detailed, annotated illustrations or diagrams.

In their discussion of physical (including man-made structures), chemical and biological factors that influence water quality, for two contrasting bodies of water in a given region, learners will demonstrate a depth of knowledge and synthesis of understanding that leads them to clearly articulated conclusions on the impact these factors have on water quality, and consequently at least two aquatic species.

Learners will demonstrate a comprehensive, reasoned appreciation of the role human activity has on the quality of water and the aquatic ecosystem for their selected contrasting situations.

For merit standard, learners will give a considered, correct account of processes involved in the hydrological cycle, using detailed, annotated illustrations or diagrams. They will give clear reasoning, demonstrating their understanding of the influence of the cycle's processes on water quality.

In their discussion of physical (including man-made structures), chemical and biological factors that influence water quality, for two contrasting bodies of water in a given region, learners will clearly show an understanding of the causal links between these factors and the quality of the water, and the impact of this quality on at least two aquatic species within the aquatic ecosystem.

Learners will demonstrate an understanding of the role human activity has on the quality of water and the aquatic ecosystem for their selected contrasting situations.

For pass standard, learners will give a simple, correct account of the hydrological cycle using selected images or illustrations, and demonstrate an understanding of the impact of the cycle on water quality.

In their discussion of physical (including man-made structures), chemical and biological factors that influence water quality, for two contrasting bodies of water in a given region, learners will demonstrate an understanding of the ways in which water quality is affected, and consider the subsequent impact on at least two aquatic species.

Learners will give details of the impact of human activity on two contrasting selected bodies of water, and demonstrate knowledge of the connection between water quality and the impact on two selected species.

Learning aims B and C

Learners carry out surveys on contrasting bodies of water, present findings and make recommendations to improve water quality.

For distinction standard, learners will carry out water surveys, actively promoting the safety of themselves and others, and anticipating dangers and acting accordingly. They will prepare and use testing kits to industry-standard levels.

Learners must give a detailed and well-evidenced rationale for their selected survey methods, which must include meticulous links between secondary research, including area maps, water uses, previous water records, and the impact of this on the expected water quality. Learners will demonstrate a sound understanding of the need to consider appropriate legislation before completing the survey, referring to at least two pieces of legislation.

A wide range of water quality tests from the biological and chemical spectrum must be carried out, including but not limited to pH measurements, temperature, dissolved, O₂.

In their report, which must be compiled in line with industry-standard conventions as detailed in the unit content, learners will correctly interpret the survey findings and accurately articulate causal links between the findings and water quality, and the consequent impact on the aquatic ecosystem. Learners will make reasoned recommendations that will accurately address issues identified and, where applicable, they will consider alternative options, selecting the most appropriate.

For merit standard, learners will carry out water surveys and work safely, showing a clear awareness of potential dangers to themselves and others. They will correctly prepare the testing kits as per user-manual guidance.

Learners must provide a clear rationale for their selected survey methods, which should include detailed secondary research, such as the inclusion of any previous history on the selected bodies of water, for example recreational or industrial uses, or previously reported water issues. Learners will demonstrate an understanding of the need to consider appropriate legislation before completing the survey, referring to at least two pieces of legislation.

A minimum of five water quality tests from the biological and chemical spectrum must be carried out, for example pH measurements, temperature, dissolved, O₂.

In their report of survey findings, learners will demonstrate a sound understanding of the link between survey results and their conclusions on water quality. Learners will provide detailed recommendations for water treatment, clearly linking them to their survey findings and giving sound reasons for the suggested treatments and the expected impact on water quality and aquatic species. Given timescales will be logical and well considered.

For pass standard, learners will carry out water surveys safely, using appropriate PPE such as gloves or suitable footwear, and using correct testing equipment and methods as indicated in the unit content.

Learners will give reasons for their selected survey methods, demonstrating a clear understanding of the link between the water sampling tasks carried out and the expected results. They will identify two pieces of legislation that may need to be considered prior to survey completion.

A minimum of five water sampling tests should be carried out on each site, which may include temperature, pH measurement.

Learners will present their findings, including limited data, in the correct format, including one aim and a minimum of three objectives, and a brief overview of methodology, results, discussion and a conclusion. They will suggest appropriate recommendations for water treatment, together with reasons for their suggestions. Given timescales to meet the objectives will be logical and realistic.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors
- Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 17: Management of Deer in the UK

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills to produce a management plan for deer in a captive environment in the UK.

Unit introduction

The deer population in the UK is an important part of the natural heritage and many people visit the countryside, parks and farms to enjoy observing them. The management of deer in parks is often carried out by gamekeepers, who have a mixture of knowledge and skills covering both farmed and wild deer. The growth in deer numbers and popularity means it is important to understand their origins, behaviour, uses and impact on the environment in which they live.

In this unit, you will explore the characteristics and behaviour of common species of deer found in the UK, using their distinguishing features to identify the species. By studying the health and husbandry of deer, you will learn the importance of maintaining healthy herds to support their management in a captive environment. You will learn about legislation and codes of practice relating to the management of captive deer, and will produce a deer management plan, in respect of their health and welfare, and their impact on the environment.

This unit will help you to progress to employment in areas relating to the management of captive or wild deer, such as gamekeeping or habitat management, in roles such as park ranger, or deer farm worker. It will also help you progress to higher education in courses such as gamekeeping and wildlife management, land management, or countryside management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate the characteristics and behaviour of deer found in the UK and their impact on the environment
- B** Explore the needs of captive deer herds in the UK, to plan their management
- C** Develop a management plan for captive deer in the UK.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate the characteristics and behaviour of deer found in the UK and their impact on the environment	A1 Characteristics of UK deer species A2 Behaviour of deer A3 Habitat preferences of wild deer	A report investigating the characteristics, habitat and behaviour of three UK wild deer species and their impact on the environment.
B Explore the needs of captive deer herds in the UK, to plan their management	B1 Management of captive deer herds B2 Deer health management B3 Deer husbandry	A management plan for a species of captive deer in a defined environment, to meet given objectives, with an accompanying report on the management approaches selected to meet health and welfare needs of captive deer.
C Develop a management plan for captive deer in the UK	C1 Structure and features of a deer management plan	

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate the characteristics and behaviour of deer found in the UK and their impact on the environment

A1 Characteristics of UK deer species

- The origin and introduction of UK wild deer species, including:
 - red
 - fallow
 - sika
 - roe
 - Chinese water deer
 - Reeves' muntjac
 - red sika hybrids.
- Key features used to identify deer species, including size, weight, body shape, coat, antlers, behavioural characteristics, facial characteristics, seasonal changes in appearance, height of different species.
- Terminology used to describe sex and age of deer, including bucks, stags, does, hinds, fawns, yearlings.
- Annual life cycle of deer species, including breeding, rut, birth, antler casting and growth.
- Structure and function of deer anatomy, to include:
 - digestive system
 - teeth and tooth eruption pattern
 - suborbital, interdigital and metatarsal glands
 - antlers and their growth pattern
 - major muscle groups
 - male and female reproductive system.
- Position of vital organs for culling and humane killing, to include heart, lungs, spleen, liver and rumen, brain, spinal cord.

A2 Behaviour of deer

- Distinguishing behaviour between the species, e.g. vocal sounds, feeding habitats, social activity.
- Pre- and post-breeding behaviour, including herding, wallowing, barking, fighting, rutting, social structure, male and female changes, relationship between young and adult deer.
- Factors influencing behaviour, including season, human interaction, predators, environment, habitat preferences.

A3 Habitat preferences of wild deer

- Population and distribution of UK deer species.
- Features of typical habitats for different deer species, including moorland, farmland, heath, urban, woodland, e.g. coniferous, broadleaved, mixed, undergrowth, swamps and reed beds.
- The relationship between habitat and feed preferences, feeding behaviour, and stage in life cycle.
- Signs of deer presence, including visual, calls, tracks, faeces, wallows, browsing and browse line, fraying, thrashing.
- Positive and negative impacts of deer on habitats, including damage to crops and woodland, effect on other species, natural regeneration of vegetation, human and animal health, conservation, economic (tourism and recreation).
- The importance of habitat management for deer, e.g. vegetation management, use of chemicals, methods of habitat protection.
- Urban and rural conflicts with expanding human and deer populations such as increased road traffic collisions.

Learning aim B: Explore the needs of captive deer herds in the UK, to plan their management

B1 Management of captive deer herds

- Differences between captive and farmed deer management, including deer in parks, deer farms, transportation and culling, welfare; despatching and disposal, e.g. abattoir and field slaughter.
- Adaptation of deer to captive management, including suitable species for farms or parks and country estates, behaviour, rearing young deer, diet and seasonal feeding.
- Reasons for captive deer management, including maintaining aesthetic and historical value, e.g. country estates, deer parks; deer farming for venison production, breeding potential and by-products, species conservation.
- Breeding stock sources and considerations, including health status certification, genetic records, purpose of deer herd.
- Record keeping, to include types and reasons for record keeping, e.g. veterinary and medicine records, production, welfare, movement, legal, quality assurance.
- Health and safety considerations when working with captive deer, e.g. use of firearms, handling and transportation, Health and Safety at Work etc. Act 1974, public access.
- Relevant current legislation and codes of practice for managing deer, e.g. Deer Code of Recommendations for the Welfare of Livestock, The Welfare of Animals (Transport) Order 2006, Tuberculosis (Deer) Order 1989.

B2 Deer health management

Factors and processes involved in the management of common diseases and disorders in captive deer to maintain production.

- Basic health assessment techniques and indicators, including:
 - observation, e.g. open ground, normal herd activity
 - behavioural observation, to include feeding and appetite, posture and movement
 - observation of appearance and condition, to include body and coat condition, faeces, antlers
 - visual symptoms, e.g. coughing, eye discharge
 - testing, e.g. brucellosis, tuberculosis
 - carcass examination.
- External parasites, including their impact on deer health and management: ticks, keds, lice and warble flies.
- Internal parasites, their life cycle and impact on deer health and production, to include lung worm, liver fluke, gastrointestinal worms – tapeworm, meningeal worm, arterial worm, sarcocystis, nasal bots.
- Diseases and conditions affecting deer health and management, including Lyme disease, mange, warts, foot rot.
- Notifiable diseases and the actions for reporting and managing deer suspected of them, including blue tongue, foot and mouth, tuberculosis, chronic wasting disease.
- Prevention of diseases and disorders, including nutritional management, testing vaccination, drenching; stock management, e.g. avoiding overstocking, pasture management, isolation of new deer, monitoring, susceptibility of species to diseases.

B3 Deer husbandry

Factors affecting the welfare, feeding, resources and nutritional requirements of deer in a captive environment.

- Welfare requirements, including shelter, herd structure, stocking rates, handling and movement, legislation and codes of practice.
- Resource requirements for managing deer safely, including fencing, handling (pens/crashes/races), housing, capturing and culling.
- Feeding and water requirements: daily and seasonal, indoor and outdoor, different ages and stages in life cycle, amount, type and quality of feed (silage, root crop straw), to control or capture deer, environment and management (production system).
- Nutritional requirements, including calculating requirements, metabolic changes with sex, age, breeding and season, availability of cover, weather, response to stress, energy requirements, protein requirements.
- Breeding and reproduction of deer in captive environments, e.g. gestation, oestrus, breeding life cycle of hind and buck, ratios of breeding animals, changes in behaviour and appearances, weaning of young deer.

Learning aim C: Develop a management plan for captive deer in the UK**C1 Structure and features of a deer management plan**

Key considerations and factors included in a deer management plan.

- Aims and objectives, including reasons for captivity, e.g. for venison, visitor attraction, breeding stock.
- Geographical location, land characteristics and limitations, to include habitat type, shelter, protection, stocking capacity, grazing and pasture type, water availability.
- Legal requirements, e.g. records, deer welfare.
- Deer health and husbandry management, based on month and season, including assessment of health, prevention of diseases and disorders, housing requirements, feeding and stocking density, records required, e.g. movement.
- Breeding plan, including breeding purpose, e.g. meat or breeding stock, sourcing breeding stock and stock selection of hinds and stags, releasing on site, purchasing, rearing, weaning young, additional feeding and nutritional requirements for calving and weaning.
- Resource requirements, e.g. fencing, handling systems, machinery.
- Financial costs, e.g. resources, deer, healthcare, feed.
- Rationale for deer management strategy.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate the characteristics and behaviour of deer found in the UK and their impact on the environment		A.D1 Evaluate the relationship between the impact of wild deer on the environment and their physical and behavioural characteristics and habitat preferences.
A.P1 Explain physical and behavioural characteristics of wild deer in the UK. A.P2 Explain the habitat preferences and environmental impact of wild deer in the UK.	A.M1 Discuss the impact on the environment of wild deer in the UK, with reference to their habitat preferences and physical and behavioural characteristics.	
Learning aim B: Explore the needs of captive deer herds in the UK, to plan their management		B.D2 Evaluate the effectiveness of management systems to meet the health and welfare needs of captive deer in the UK.
B.P3 Explain management approaches for captive deer in the UK. B.P4 Explain the health and welfare requirements of captive deer in the UK.	B.M2 Assess the suitability of management approaches to meet the health and welfare needs of captive deer in the UK.	
Learning aim C: Develop a management plan for captive deer in the UK		C.D3 Produce a comprehensive deer management plan for a species of deer in a captive environment, providing a detailed rationale for approaches taken.
C.P5 Produce a simple deer management plan for a species of deer in a captive environment to meet identified objectives. C.P6 Explain management decisions in own management plan.	C.M3 Produce a detailed deer management plan for a species of deer in a captive environment to meet identified objectives. C.M4 Analyse the impact of decisions made in own management plan.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- deer in a captive environment, which could be a deer farm, deer park or country park
- visiting speakers such as gamekeepers, a deer park manager or others involved in the management of deer herds
- relevant resources to support teaching such as skulls, antlers, images, etc.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will produce an in-depth account of the relationship between the positive and negative impacts of UK wild deer on the environment.

Through their evidence, learners will demonstrate a robust understanding of the characteristics, behaviour and habitat preference of at least three wild deer species.

Learners will comprehensively review secondary information and data, and will support their account with well-chosen examples. Learners' conclusions will contain clearly articulated reasoning drawn from their evidence. They will show breadth and depth of knowledge and understanding of typical habitats, and the importance of managing them in supporting wild deer and environmental management, for example tree protection to provide shelter for the deer while enabling tree growth.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate an understanding of the different characteristics, habitat preferences and behaviour of at least three species of UK wild deer by making relevant, analytical judgements.

Learners will demonstrate a reasoned understanding in relation to linking the impact of deer on the environment to the habitat preferences, behaviour and characteristics of wild deer.

Learners will assess impacts of the species on the environment through the examination of at least two positive and two negative impacts. Learners will provide a clear review of secondary information and data, and will use mostly relevant examples to support their understanding. They will give clear reasons for any conclusions. Learners will show some understanding of typical habitats and the importance of managing them in supporting wild deer and environmental management.

For pass standard, learners will give a limited, realistic account of the characteristics, habitat preferences and behaviour of three UK wild deer species.

Learners will show an awareness of the relationship between the environmental impact and the habitat, characteristics and behaviour of deer, using some relevant examples.

Learners will recall knowledge to show their understanding of the impact of UK wild deer on the environment, for example damage to crops and trees. Learners will use some secondary information and data, and will use specific examples from their own research but these may be limited in scope or relevance.

Learning aims B and C

Learners should prepare their own deer management plan for a specific species to meet identified objectives such as for deer farming, or a country park. The plan should be based on either research carried out or a field visit.

For distinction standard, learners must carry out research, using relevant sources, into the management of a captive deer species, clearly articulating the approaches and husbandry techniques that can be used to meet the health and welfare of the deer, and the legislative requirements associated with their captivity. They will use the findings of their own research to develop a thoroughly considered deer management plan. The plan will demonstrate learners' capacity to critically appraise the different management approaches explored in their research, resulting in the selection of those chosen for their plan.

Learners will make comprehensive, accurate links between the chosen deer species and the plan objectives, the husbandry and welfare approaches adopted in the plan, and appropriate legislation. In their management decisions, learners will thoroughly consider all the identified objectives, addressing each in detail at each stage in their planning.

Learners' reasoning throughout will be detailed, robust and evidence based, and will demonstrate a fully-considered understanding of possible constraints, such as the location of the site, characteristics and behaviour of the deer species, and any limitations of the land.

Learners will use appropriate technical language consistently and accurately throughout the plan.

Learners will use logical, concise and professional arguments when providing reasons for the approaches and decisions taken in preparing their management plan.

They will provide detailed and robust justifications for the conclusions they reached.

For merit standard, learners must carry out research into the management of captive deer, demonstrating a sound understanding of the management approaches used to meet the health and welfare for a given deer species and the legislative requirements for their management. They will use the findings of their own research to develop a complete and fully-considered deer management plan, demonstrating a clear understanding of the advantages and disadvantages of the approaches researched.

Learners will demonstrate a sound appreciation of the links between the aims and objectives of the plan, the health and welfare needs of the deer species, the approaches selected for their husbandry, and the legal requirements for their management.

It will be clear from the evidence that learners have considered most of the identified objectives of the plan in some detail, although the level of detail for each may vary.

The management plan will be logically reasoned, with balanced consideration given to the factors affecting the decisions required for its development. Learners will provide evidence to support their decisions using real, generally relevant examples and arguments.

Learners will use appropriate technical language throughout the plan but this may be inconsistent.

For pass standard, learners will evidence research carried out into the management approaches of captive deer and their health, welfare and legislative requirements, providing details of approaches available for a given deer species. They will use the findings of their own research to develop a deer management plan for a species of deer, demonstrating some consideration for their chosen approaches.

In their plan, learners will show an awareness of the health requirements for the deer species, the activities associated with the husbandry approaches, and legal considerations required in relation to deer management.

Learners will have considered the key objectives of the plan, completing briefly all sections of the plan detailed in the unit content.

Learners will provide some reasoning for the decisions taken in their plan, such as choice of aims and objectives and resource requirements, and will show some understanding of the wider issues such as location, characteristics of the species, and limitations of the land. They will support this with examples, using some appropriate technical language.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 18: Tree Felling and Chainsaw Safety

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills to use and maintain petrol-driven chainsaws for the felling and cutting up of trees, with emphasis on appropriate felling techniques and the safe handling of saws.

Unit introduction

The use of chainsaws is extremely important in many of the land-based industries. As a consequence, it is vital that chainsaw operators can maintain and use their chainsaw within the manufacturer's guidelines. The need for the operator to be competent, safe and efficient at using a chainsaw is paramount.

In this unit, you will learn to undertake the chainsaw maintenance required for safe and efficient operation, including how to identify common problems and resolve them. You will use a chainsaw to undertake basic felling and cross-cutting of small diameter trees, including dismantling trees on the ground. To complete the assessment tasks within this unit, you will need to draw on your learning from across your programme.

The skills you learn in this unit are key to employment in the forestry and arboriculture sectors. They are also useful in countryside management, farming and conservation in roles such as ranger or estate supervisor. The unit will enable you to progress to relevant certificates of competence, or higher education courses, such as Foundation or Bachelor Degrees in Arboriculture.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate the safe use of chainsaws, including site and tree inspections associated with chainsaw operations
- B** Carry out the maintenance of a petrol-driven chainsaw to maintain efficiency and safety
- C** Use accepted working practices to fell and cross-cut small diameter trees.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate the safe use of chainsaws, including site and tree inspections associated with chainsaw operations	A1 Chainsaws and their safe use A2 Site and tree inspection	A report on a site and tree inspection involving the intended felling of a small diameter tree in a situation with possible hazards.
B Carry out the maintenance of a petrol-driven chainsaw to maintain efficiency and safety	B1 Checking the chain and sprocket, and sharpening B2 Maintaining the engine and saw B3 Checking safety features	Task involving the sharpening of a chain and maintenance of the saw.
C Use accepted working practices to fell and cross-cut small diameter trees	C1 Work organisation C2 Cross-cutting techniques C3 Felling techniques and procedures	Felling and clearing up of small diameter trees in a clear-fell situation. Evaluation of own performance in felling small diameter trees and disposing of waste.

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate the safe use of chainsaws, including site and tree inspections associated with chainsaw operations

A1 Chainsaws and their safe use

- Chainsaw types, uses, characteristics and features:
 - types and styles of chainsaw, relationship to use and wood type
 - major manufacturers and current models of main manufacturers
 - engine size and guide bar length for task
 - two-stroke engines and their main components
 - environmental factors relevant to chainsaw design, to include fuel efficiency, emissions reduction, use of bio oils rather than mineral oils.
- Safe use of a saw:
 - safety features, including anti-kickback devices, chain catchers, anti-vibration mounts
 - personal protective equipment (PPE), including helmet, visor, earmuffs, protective trousers, protective boots, jacket and gloves
 - safe working techniques – correct methods to hold and manipulate saws, health and safety considerations, including safety of self and others, e.g. passers-by, the public, co-workers
 - environmental considerations, to include noise, pollution, waste disposal.

A2 Site and tree inspection

- Site and tree inspection:
 - risk assessment and potential hazards
 - work planning, including where to stand when carrying out felling, where to leave tools, fuel, oil and equipment, where trimming might be placed
 - condition of site and tree, direction of fall
 - surroundings, including site access, environmental considerations, topography
 - access and escape routes.
- Problem trees, their issues, identification and felling solutions, to include:
 - hung-up trees
 - leaning trees
 - diseased or hollow trees
 - multi-stem trees
 - windblown trees
 - branches under tension.
- Consideration of potential impact on the environment and sustainability:
 - impacts on wildlife, e.g. bat roosts, badger setts, cavity-nesting birds
 - saproxylic species (animals that feed on dead wood) and importance of dead wood in woodland ecosystems
 - statutory designations, e.g. Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSIs), Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs), current legislation and guidelines
 - replacement planting.

Learning aim B: Carry out the maintenance of a petrol-driven chainsaw to maintain efficiency and safety

B1 Checking the chain and sprocket, and sharpening

- Chain inspection and maintenance:
 - chain – tension, height of depth gauge, condition of teeth-cutting edge, wear of teeth
 - guide bar – straightness, wear of channel, signs of blueing (overheating), lubrication
 - wear on sprocket, including signs of damage.
- Sharpening the chain:
 - use of guides to check depth gauges and use of appropriate flat files to adjust accordingly
 - selecting appropriate round file and using guide, with reference to operator manual to sharpen chain, each tooth sharpened to the same length, working to left- and right-handed teeth.

B2 Maintaining the engine and saw

Processes and techniques used in routine maintenance:

- use of operator's manual, service intervals, visual checks
- identification and mixing of correct fuel petrol/oil ratio
- safe refuelling
- use of chain oil for lubrication
- location of spark plug and its use as an indicator of problems, replacement of spark plug
- location of air filter and its cleaning and replacement
- cleaning the external and internal surfaces of the saw.

B3 Checking safety features

Methods and approaches used to ensure saw safety features are effective and operable.

- Saw safety features:
 - stop/off switch, safety (dead hand) throttle
 - chain brake, anti-vibration mounts.
- Chain safety features:
 - depth gauges and correct chain, chain catcher in place, use of safety guide bar.

Learning aim C: Use accepted working practices to fell and cross-cut small diameter trees

C1 Work organisation

Establishing a safe working site.

- Risk assessment, use of warning signs, exclusion zones.
- Positioning of equipment and fuel storage.
- Use of PPE, including gloves, chainsaw trousers, boots and helmet.
- Pre-start checks, starting the saw (cold and warm starts).
- Consideration of ground conditions, including firmness and impediments to access and escape, e.g. brambles, ivy, fences, boggy ground.

C2 Cross-cutting techniques

The importance of safe and competent use of the chainsaw in cutting branches using cross-cutting techniques.

- Stance and holding the saw in a way that minimises kickback risk.
- Effort and dangers to the user.
- Understanding and recognising tension and compression in limbs and the dangers of them.
- Offering the saw to the wood, including:
 - avoiding using the tip
 - sequence of cuts to reduce risk of saw becoming pinched in the wood.
- Assessing risk, including dangers from released tension and dropping cut wood.

C3 Felling techniques and procedures

- Using a chainsaw to fell a small diameter tree:
 - deciding on direction of fall, including lean of tree, possible problems and desired direction
 - consideration of environmental conditions, e.g. wind speed and direction, rain
 - using correct sequence of cuts and system
 - position of cuts for the notch, size and direction of cuts, and the felling cut
 - maintenance of a suitably-sized hinge
 - awareness of possible use of felling aids, including wedges and felling lever.
- Delimiting and clearing up:
 - moving safely between work positions
 - work methods
 - tree condition
 - ground conditions
 - ancillary equipment
 - safe handling of products and arisings
 - health and safety
 - risk assessment
 - PPE
 - awareness of methods for stump removal, including stump grinders, chemicals, heavy plant, winching systems, jacks, fire, hand digging
 - methods of waste disposal and their consequences for the environment and sustainability, including sale of by-products, timber stacks, eco-piles, dead hedges, chipping, burning.
- Methods and requirements for felling difficult trees:
 - felling methods
 - risk assessment
 - PPE
 - environmental considerations
 - site conditions
 - escape routes
 - safe working distance
 - relevant current legislation and codes of practice
 - use of felling aids, e.g. felling levers, wedges, winches, round slings, strops and ropes.
- Use of feedback on own performance from relevant sources:
 - sources, e.g. peer observation, videos, observation or witness sheets
 - reviewing feedback collected and drawing conclusions
 - suggesting improvements and further development.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate the safe use of chainsaws, including site and tree inspections associated with chainsaw operations		
<p>A.P1 Explain factors affecting the selection of a chainsaw.</p> <p>A.P2 Carry out a competent site and tree inspection, explaining risks to be considered before felling and cross-cutting operations.</p>	<p>A.M1 Assess the factors affecting chainsaw selection.</p> <p>A.M2 Carry out a proficient site and tree inspection, assessing the risks before felling and cross-cutting operations.</p>	<p>A.D1 Perform tree inspection with technical accuracy, evaluating the risks before felling and cross-cutting operations.</p>
Learning aim B: Carry out the maintenance of a petrol-driven chainsaw to maintain efficiency and safety		
<p>B.P3 Explain common faults in chainsaws.</p> <p>B.P4 Competently demonstrate pre-start checks and routine operator maintenance on a chainsaw in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and health and safety guidelines.</p>	<p>B.M3 Assess the importance of carrying out routine chainsaw maintenance and pre-start checks.</p> <p>B.M4 Demonstrate proficient pre-start checks and routine operator maintenance on a chainsaw in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and health and safety guidelines.</p>	<p>B.D2 Demonstrate to industry standard routine operator maintenance of a chainsaw, justifying the routine chainsaw maintenance and pre-start checks carried out.</p>
Learning aim C: Use accepted working practices to fell and cross-cut small diameter trees		
<p>C.P5 Fell and cross-cut selected small diameter trees competently to meet given objectives.</p> <p>C.P6 Use feedback to review own performance in felling and cross-cutting selected small diameter trees to meet given objectives.</p>	<p>C.M5 Fell and cross-cut selected small diameter trees proficiently, analysing own skills to meet given objectives.</p>	<p>C.D3 Fell and cross-cut selected small diameter trees to industry standard, evaluating the effectiveness of the tasks carried out against given objectives and relevant feedback.</p>

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of three summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.M2, A.D1)

Learning aim: B (B.P3, B.P4, B.M3, B.M4, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M5, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a selection of chainsaws
- tools for the maintenance of chainsaws, including files, gauges, brushes, spanners and screwdrivers
- suitable PPE specific to chainsaw use
- fuels, oils, greases and cleaning materials
- a safe location in which to work
- suitable small diameter trees.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will carry out a site and tree inspection to a standard that reflects what is expected in the workplace. Based on their inspection, learners will produce a detailed report, covering all relevant issues and identifying all risks and potential hazards before felling and cross-cutting. They will produce robust solutions for the felling operation, producing a safe, comprehensive system of working that incorporates all relevant aspects of sustainability. The techniques proposed will be considered comprehensively against accepted practice, with specific reasoned references as to why and how various aspects are effective. Learners will show a depth of understanding of the legislative and certification requirements relevant to the use of chainsaws and their application in practice. They will fully justify the selection of a particular chainsaw, with logical and cohesive reference to length of bar, chain type, engine size, design, weight and safety features. Learners' evidence will demonstrate a well-reasoned, convincing response and will be technically accurate and fully relevant.

For merit standard, learners will carry out a site and tree inspection, making efficient use of time and resources. Based on their inspection, learners will make relevant, analytical judgements, covering most of the relevant issues. They will provide clear justification for the selection of a particular chainsaw for the felling operation. Learners will give a detailed and balanced analysis of the risks associated with felling and cross-cutting, with mostly relevant suggestions for minimising these risks. They will demonstrate an understanding of the concepts and practices of sustainability in relation to tree felling. Learners will show an understanding of the legislative and certification requirements relevant to the use of chainsaws and their application in practice. Learners' evidence will be mainly technically accurate and relevant and will show consideration of relevant aspects of sustainability.

For pass standard, learners will carry out a site and tree inspection appropriately but may need some supervision at times. Based on their inspection, learners will produce a limited, realistic account covering some of the relevant issues. They will recognise the components of a chainsaw and show appropriate understanding of how these affect the selection of a saw for the felling of a small diameter tree. Learners will demonstrate some relevant understanding of the concepts and practices of sustainability in relation to tree felling. They will demonstrate some understanding of the risks associated with a site and with the actual felling and subsequent operations but this may be limited in scope. Learners will have a basic understanding of the legislative and certification requirements relevant to the use of chainsaws, with an awareness of their application in practice. Learners' evidence will be realistic and may be supported by limited use of relevant examples.

Learning aim B

For distinction standard, learners will carry out routine operator maintenance on a chainsaw to a high standard and with confidence, considering all relevant issues and producing robust solutions. Learners will provide evidence of ways in which they have minimised risk. They will accurately select and use tools and equipment to carry out maintenance proficiently and to a standard that reflects what is expected in the workplace. The work will be carried out without assistance, other than use of the relevant manufacturer's recommendations, and will be technically correct and in accordance with relevant legislation. Learners will carry out thorough pre-start checks, with specific, logical justification of decisions made during the process. They will carry out all work in a sensible, logical order, demonstrating their confidence. Learners' evidence will demonstrate a consistent use of accurate and relevant terminology.

Learners will keep detailed and accurate records as appropriate to the tasks being carried out.

For merit standard, learners will carry out routine operator maintenance on a chainsaw safely and efficiently, considering most of the relevant issues and producing efficient solutions. Learners will show consideration of the associated risks and hazards. They will select and use tools and equipment to maintain and repair land-based machinery safely and efficiently in accordance with legislation and codes of practice. Learners will use manufacturer's recommendations with some confidence and with minimal assistance. They will demonstrate an understanding of the importance of carrying out each aspect of pre-start checks before maintenance is carried out and of the maintenance itself. Their reasoning will be technically accurate and clear. Learners will organise their work and carry out tasks in a logical sequence, which they will explain clearly.

Learners will keep records, as appropriate to the tasks and with sufficient detail, so it is clear what has been carried out.

For pass standard, learners will carry out pre-start checks and routine operator maintenance on a chainsaw that requires a limited range of tools and equipment. Learners will consider some of the relevant issues. They will show a realistic awareness of the risks and potential issues that could arise. Learners will explore possible common faults with chainsaws and explain them in a way that shows an awareness of the concepts that is realistic and acceptable but possibly limited in scope. They will carry out maintenance tasks, demonstrating acceptable workplace practice by working safely and in accordance with relevant legislation. Learners will show that they can follow manufacturer's recommendations but may need some limited supervision and assistance in determining sensible sequences of work.

Learners will show an appropriate awareness of the importance of keeping appropriate records that provide the key information.

Learning aim C

For distinction standard, learners will carry out felling and cross-cutting of small diameter trees to a high standard and with confidence, covering all the relevant issues. Learners will provide evidence of ways in which they have minimised risk. They will accurately select and use tools and equipment to carry out felling and cross-cutting proficiently and to a standard that reflects what is expected in the workplace. Learners will show complete competence in the use of skills and techniques, including positioning of self, manipulation of saw, position and depth of cuts used, working independently and safely at all times. They will fully assess the associated risks and hazards. Learners will ensure the workplace is prepared and cleared after task completion in line with practices, showing depth of understanding of environmental issues and sustainable waste disposal.

Learners will keep detailed and accurate records as appropriate to the tasks being carried out.

Learners will evaluate the tasks they carried out against accepted practice and legislative requirements. They will make specific, reasoned references as to why and how the various aspects of the work meet the given objectives, making specific references to the feedback received and providing suitable and insightful justifications for the recommendations for improvement.

For merit standard, learners will carry out felling and cross-cutting of small diameter trees safely and efficiently, considering most of the relevant issues. Learners will show some competence in the use of skills and techniques, including positioning of self, manipulation of saw, position and depth of cuts used. They will assess the associated risks and hazards, selecting and using tools and equipment to carry out felling and cross-cutting safely and efficiently, in accordance with legislation and codes of practice. Learners will ensure the workplace is prepared and cleared after task completion in line with practices, showing some understanding of environmental considerations and the principles of sustainable waste disposal.

Learners will keep records as appropriate to the tasks, with sufficient detail so it is clear what has been carried out.

Learners will reflect on the approaches they used and make clear connections to their impact on the operations carried out and the given objectives. They will make clear and relevant references to feedback received and make mainly relevant recommendations for improvement.

For pass standard, learners will carry out felling and cross-cutting of small diameter trees safely but with some limited supervision. Their use of the chainsaw may contain minor inefficiencies in technique, such as positioning and depth of cuts, but there will be no crucial errors or health and safety shortfalls. Learners will demonstrate breadth of knowledge in how different techniques or methods may be applied in specific contexts to safely fell and cross-cut a small diameter tree. They will show a realistic awareness of the risks and potential issues that could arise. Learners will use the appropriate tools and equipment to carry out felling and cross-cutting but with some limited supervision. They will work safely and in accordance with relevant legislation. Learners will ensure the site is cleared after task completion and that waste is disposed of appropriately, showing a realistic awareness and understanding of sustainability concepts and practices relating to tree felling.

Learners will show an appropriate awareness of the importance of keeping appropriate records that provide the key information.

Learners will use feedback to review their skills and techniques in a realistic way, although their review may be unbalanced and limited in parts.

Links to other units

The assessment for this unit should draw on knowledge, understanding and skills developed from:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 19: Coastal Habitats Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills needed to investigate coastal habitats, the threats these habitats face and possible solutions to enable future management planning.

Unit introduction

Nowhere in the UK is more than 70 miles from the coast, and ten of the 20 most populated cities are on the coast, with around 95 per cent of Britain's trade conducted through its ports. Many important wildlife sites, particularly for migrating waterbirds, are found along the coastal environment. The areas between the land and sea that make up the coastal zone are, therefore, vital to both humans and wildlife. Management of these coastal sites, and balancing the diverse interests in them, such as tourism, fishing and wildlife conservation, are becoming increasingly important, particularly in light of rising sea levels.

In this unit, you will study the wildlife found in habitats such as rock pools, sand dunes and salt marshes. You will learn how to survey coastal habitats and investigate the impacts of the threats many of these habitats face. With this understanding, you will be able to suggest future management planning approaches.

This unit will help you prepare for employment opportunities, such as an assistant ranger or Shoresearch Officer with the Wildlife Trusts. You could also progress to higher education, with opportunities to study a degree in Ecology, Marine Biology or Conservation Management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Explore UK coastal habitats and species to manage the threats that affect them
- B** Understand techniques and methods employed to effectively manage coastal habitats
- C** Carry out practical surveys to plan coastal management.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Explore UK coastal habitats and species to manage the threats that affect them	A1 UK coastal habitats A2 Coastal wildlife A3 Threats to coastal habitats	A report or a presentation investigating coastal habitats, the habitat adaptations of typical flora and fauna, and the threats they face.
B Understand techniques and methods employed to effectively manage coastal habitats	B1 Methods of surveying coastal habitats B2 Practical management techniques	A portfolio of evidence, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • coastal survey with reasons for selecting the survey method and presentation of results • details of practical management being applied • brief coastal management plan, including reference to site designations or legislation.
C Carry out practical surveys to plan coastal management	C1 Coastal habitat surveys C2 Coastal legislation and site designations C3 Coastal management plans	

Content

Learning aim A: Explore UK coastal habitats and species to manage the threats that affect them

A1 UK coastal habitats

Features and characteristics of habitat types and the natural processes involved in their formation.

- Habitat types.
- Saltmarsh, pioneer, establishment, stabilised, climax.
- Vegetated shingle, dynamic environment.
- Hard cliffs, to include granite, sandstone, limestone.
- Soft cliffs, to include chalk, shales, boulder clays.
- Sand dunes, e.g. pioneer, yellow, grey.
- Rocky foreshore, e.g. underside of rocks or other structures, species in rock pools.
- Strandline.
- Mudflats, muddy foreshore.
- Sediment, size and types.
- Natural processes and their impact on coastal habitat construction and destruction:
 - coastal erosion, including abrasion, corrosion, hydraulic action, attrition, corrosion
 - wind power intensifying erosion
 - wave action, including longshore drift, swash and backwash
 - deposition and accretion
 - saltation
 - tidal currents and tidal surge
 - tidal range, including inundation of habitats
 - geomorphologic formations, including headlands, wave-cut platforms and sea stacks.

A2 Coastal wildlife

- Wildlife and their adaptations to coastal environments:
 - coastal birds – waders, terns, gulls, geese, peregrines
 - coastal invertebrates – molluscs, crustaceans, polychaetes, echinoderms
 - vegetation – brackish, saltwater tolerant, pioneer, annual, perennial
 - marine species – seals, porpoises, whales, turtles.
- Biotic influences on wildlife adaptations:
 - competition – interspecific and intraspecific competition, succession, zonation
 - adaptations, e.g. root length, seed dispersion, bill length.
- Abiotic influences on wildlife adaptations:
 - light, humidity, pH, position within zone, exposure, e.g. desiccation.

A3 Threats to coastal habitats

Threats from human activities:

- coastal debris, including plastics, balloons, fishing equipment
- recreational use, including mobile activities, e.g. mountain biking, horse riding, jet skiing, and static activities, e.g. caravan parks, marinas, campsites
- climate change, including rising sea levels, storm surges
- coastal squeeze
- fishing activities, including overfishing, scallop dredging, throwback
- agriculture, including land reclamation for grazing, pesticide and fertiliser run-off
- industry, including shipping and oil spills, tidal lagoons, wind turbines
- introduction of alien species, e.g. Chinese mitten crab.

Learning aim B: Understand techniques and methods employed to effectively manage coastal habitats

B1 Methods of surveying coastal habitats

Considerations, methods, techniques and equipment used in surveying coastal habitats.

- Primary data collection:
 - transect surveys measuring zonation
 - measurement of topography using sights, surveying poles, clinometers
 - surveying methods, including quadrats, coring, grab sampling, dredge netting, plankton netting
 - measuring abiotic conditions using light meters, thermometers, anemometer.
- Secondary data collection:
 - photographic documentation
 - analysis of photographic records
 - historical mapping
 - historical data.
- Compliance with wildlife legislation.

B2 Practical management techniques

The uses, advantages and disadvantages of coastal management approaches and techniques.

- Practical conservation tasks:
 - visitor management techniques:
 - interpretation
 - control of access, including signposting, use of netting and volunteers
 - construction of boardwalks
 - wildlife monitoring.
- Methods to respond to human threats:
 - oil spills – deploying booms, spraying dispersants, sorbent mats
 - fishing – No Take Zones (NTZ), quotas, ban on dredging
 - coastal debris – beach cleaning
 - surveying and recording impacts.
- Methods to respond to natural threats.
- Hard defences, to include:
 - rock gabions
 - nearshore breakwaters
 - artificial reefs
 - seawalls
 - groynes
 - rip rap
 - revetments.
- Soft defences:
 - dune grass planting
 - dune fencing
 - sandbag structures
 - beach nourishment.
- Managed realignment.

Learning aim C: Carry out practical surveys to plan coastal management

C1 Coastal habitat surveys

Considerations and processes involved in carrying out coastal surveys and reporting results.

- Health and safety:
 - personal protective equipment (PPE)
 - risk assessments, including wildlife, e.g. jellyfish, adders, sea urchins, and landscape and terrain, e.g. rockfalls, quicksand, creeks.
- Timing of survey, including season, time of day.
- Preparation and use of surveying equipment, e.g. setting out for flora or fauna.
- Legal considerations when undertaking surveys, i.e. nesting birds.
- Diversity and abundance of flora and fauna species recorded in each habitat.
- Presentation of survey data, including tables and graphs.
- Interpretation of data using frequency, e.g. mean, median, mode.

C2 Coastal legislation and site designations

- Legislation affecting coastal management and access, including:
 - Natura 2000, including EU Habitats Directive Special Areas of Conservation (SACs), EU Birds Directive Special Protection Areas (SPAs)
 - Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981
 - Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009
 - Ramsar sites
 - Marine Conservation Zones (MCZs).
- Site designations:
 - Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)
 - National Nature Reserve
 - Marine Nature Reserve
 - Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty (AONB), including Norfolk and Northumberland
 - Shoreline Management Plan (SMP).

C3 Coastal management plans

Presentation of management plans for coastal habitats.

- Purpose of plan, e.g. protection of habitat, protection of specific species, threats to habitat.
- Background: location and description of site, historical information, historical data, maps.
- Objectives and prescriptions.
- Management planning techniques, including rationale.
- Timeline and implementation strategy.
- Additional considerations, e.g. legislation, site designations.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Explore UK coastal habitats and species to manage the threats that affect them		A.D1 Evaluate the ecology of given coastal habitats and the impact of human activity.
A.P1 Explain the physical processes that affect coastal habitats, and the adaptation of the flora and fauna. A.P2 Discuss the threats of human activity that affect coastal habitats.	A.M1 Analyse the impact of physical processes on coastal habitats, and the adaptation of the flora and fauna. A.M2 Assess the impact of human activity on coastal habitats.	
Learning aim B: Understand techniques and methods employed to effectively manage coastal habitats		B.D2 Evaluate the effectiveness of techniques and methods used to manage coastal habitats.
B.P3 Explain survey techniques used to identify species of flora and fauna and their zonation. B.P4 Explain practical management methods used to manage threats to coastal habitats.	B.M3 Analyse the impact of techniques and management methods on coastal habitats.	
Learning aim C: Carry out practical surveys to plan coastal management		C.D3 Plan comprehensive management of a coastal habitat selected from own surveys.
C.P5 Perform surveys of contrasting coastal habitats safely. C.P6 Produce a simple management plan to maintain and improve a selected coastal habitat.	C.M4 Produce a complex management plan to maintain and improve a coastal habitat selected from own coastal habitat surveys.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.M2, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- at least three coastal habitats
- opportunities to carry out at least three types of survey method.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners report on the physical processes and human activity that have an impact on three contrasting coastal habitats.

For distinction standard, learners will demonstrate a thorough, detailed and accurate understanding of the physical processes that occur in three different coastal habitats and how these both create and destroy coastal habitats. They will draw conclusions and make judgements in relation to the physical processes and their role in shaping the habitats, and how these provide a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna. Learners will use accurate and appropriate terminology throughout.

For each of the three habitats, learners will provide detail of the ways in which one species of flora and one species of fauna has adapted to the environment. They will demonstrate a depth of understanding as to how these species adapt to the habitat's biotic and abiotic conditions.

For each environment, learners will provide details of a different threat resulting from human activity, and consider the impact this activity has on the habitat and at least one selected species within it. They will show their comprehensive understanding of the ways habitats and species of flora and fauna respond over time to human-related coastal threats, making judgements in relation to the impact of this activity.

In their report, learners will demonstrate an astute appreciation of the complex links between the coastal ecology of the three environments and the threats they face.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate an understanding of the physical processes that occur in three different coastal habitats, showing how these processes shape the habitats and provide a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna. They will consider how coastal processes create and destroy habitats. Learners will include the use of appropriate terminology when discussing physical processes.

For each of the three habitats, learners will consider ways in which one species of flora and one species of fauna has adapted to biotic and abiotic factors within their environment. For each environment, they will provide details of a different threat resulting from human activity, and consider the impact this activity has on the habitat and at least one selected species within it. Learners will make clear links between the human activity and response of the flora and fauna over time.

In their report, learners will demonstrate a clear understanding of the complex links between the coastal ecology of the three environments and the threats they face.

For pass standard, learners will demonstrate their understanding of the physical processes that occur in three different coastal habitats, showing how these processes shape the habitats and provide a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna. They will make some attempt to show how coastal processes create and destroy habitats.

For each of the three habitats, learners will provide detail of the ways in which one species of flora and one species of fauna has adapted to the environment. For each environment, they will provide detail of a different threat resulting from human activity, and consider the impact this activity has on the habitat and at least one selected species within it.

In their report, learners will demonstrate an awareness of the complex links between the coastal ecology of the three environments and the threats they face. In considering practical management techniques, learners will clearly demonstrate an understanding of the link between natural coastal processes and the methods used to combat them.

Learning aims B and C

Learners complete flora or fauna surveys on three contrasting coastal habitats and produce a ten-year management plan for one of them.

For distinction standard, learners will produce a report with detailed reasoning for the methods used within each of the three habitat surveys, and a comprehensive rationale for the practical habitat management being employed for each.

Learners will conduct detailed and thorough habitat surveys, demonstrating a conscientious awareness of safety in the risk assessment planning and attitude to potential changes to risk to themselves and others throughout the surveys' duration. They must follow processes proficiently, using equipment accurately and skilfully. In addition to identifying common species present, they will use identification keys to skilfully identify species that may be less common, where present.

The results from the surveys will be presented to a high standard, using accurate, well-presented data, with species present at the time of the survey correctly and accurately identified.

For one of their surveyed sites, learners will produce a systematically considered management plan of at least seven objectives, with at least two specific activities for each objective. The given timescales to meet the objectives will provide evidence of robust consideration of the timeframes required. Evidence will be provided of accurate secondary research, including copies of maps. The reference to wildlife legislation will make specific reference to named species.

For merit standard, learners must produce a report that provides a clear rationale for the survey techniques used in each coastal habitat, and provide appropriate reasons for the practical management methods being employed to defend each habitat, showing a clear awareness of the contribution the defences make to the conservation of the habitat.

Learners will undertake coastal habitat surveys safely, assessing risks before and during the process. They must demonstrate competency and accuracy in their use of survey equipment and in identifying species, including, where present, species that may be less common.

Learners will report the findings of their survey using accurate data presented in an appropriate form, using this to draw sound conclusions.

Learners must select the results from one of their surveys to produce a management plan for the habitat. Their coastal management plan will comprise six logical and realistic objectives and two accompanying activities, with due consideration given to prioritisation. They will demonstrate a clear understanding of the need to consider relevant wildlife legislation and wider coastal designations in their planning.

For pass standard, learners will produce a report that provides detail of the survey techniques used in each coastal habitat and show an awareness of the practical management methods being employed to defend each habitat.

Learners must undertake coastal habitat surveys safely, planning for risks from tides, rockfalls and other sources of danger. They will correctly use surveying equipment, and identify majority species present.

Learners will report the findings of their survey, presenting data in an appropriate form and interpreting it appropriately.

Learners will select the results from one of their surveys to produce a management plan for the habitat. Their coastal management plan will comprise at least three realistic objectives and two accompanying activities for each, with an attempt at appropriate prioritisation. They will consider relevant wildlife legislation and wider coastal designations.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 20: Working Dogs

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills to manage the welfare of working dogs and plan for their training.

Unit introduction

Dogs are a familiar feature of countryside life and are used in a wide range of countryside management sectors and tasks. These different industries require people who can recognise dogs that are fit for purpose, and who have the skills to train working dogs for a range of tasks, as well as to know how to keep them in a healthy and fit condition so that they are able to work.

In this unit, you will learn about the different breeds of working dog and their suitability for specific roles. You will also learn about the simple health and first-aid management conducted by handlers to maintain the high levels of health required by working dogs, and the kennelling principles for dogs at different life stages to meet their welfare needs. You will learn the theories of dog training and learn to plan training regimes for dogs.

This unit will support your preparation for progression to employment in a range of countryside management areas, such as shooting, farming and hunting, in roles such as gamekeeper, shepherd and pest controller, all of which are available to the trained dog handler. You can develop your knowledge further through study on courses such as the Diploma in Canine Health and Nutrition, the Pearson BTEC Higher National Certificate in Animal Management, or a BSc in Animal Behaviour.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Examine the suitability of dog breeds for working roles in the countryside
- B** Investigate the health and welfare needs of dogs kept for countryside work
- C** Plan for the training of dogs working in a countryside role.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Examine the suitability of dog breeds for working roles in the countryside	A1 Working dog roles A2 Common working dog breeds and traits	Case studies of two working dog roles used to report on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • breeds and traits • kennelling • health management.
B Investigate the health and welfare needs of dogs kept for countryside work	B1 Kennelling B2 Managing the health of working dogs	
C Plan for the training of dogs working in a countryside role	C1 Working safely with dogs C2 Dog training theories and methods C3 Planning dog training	A training plan for a specific behaviour required for a working dog job role, with a supporting rationale for approaches taken.

Content

Learning aim A: Examine the suitability of dog breeds for working roles in the countryside

A1 Working dog roles

- Activities involved in working dog job roles in a countryside management setting, to include:
 - gun dogs, e.g. flushing, retrieving
 - herding dogs, e.g. sheep, cattle, pen dogs
 - tracking and scent dogs
 - hunting dogs
 - pest control.
- Legislation relating to hunting dogs and their licensing.

A2 Common working dog breeds and traits

The history and uses of common working dog breeds and their recognition.

- Common breeds and types of working dogs in the UK and their uses:
 - collies, e.g. Border, Shetland, Welsh, Bearded, Old English
 - spaniel, e.g. English springer, Cocker
 - Labrador
 - golden retriever
 - pointer
 - terrier, e.g. Jack Russell, Border, Patterdale
 - hounds and hunting dogs, e.g. foxhound, bloodhound, basset hound, whippet, greyhound, lurcher, beagle, and setter.
- History of working dog breed production, including:
 - origin of breeds, e.g. cross-breeding ancestry
 - geographical origins
 - changing breeds for working roles, e.g. spaniels and Labradors used as sniffer dogs.
- Breed identification and traits:
 - physical and behavioural traits, including size, conformation, colour, head shape, mouth shape, coat, temperament, intelligence.
- Relationship of specific traits to working dog roles, including natural behaviour, hunting, retrieving, social relationship, speed, strength, intelligence and aggression.

Learning aim B: Investigate the health and welfare needs of dogs kept for countryside work

B1 Kennelling

- Legislation and codes of practice relating to care of working dogs, e.g. the Animal Welfare Act 2006.
- Kennel design to meet the welfare needs of working dogs and ease of use for human handlers:
 - spatial requirements, e.g. size of dog, age of dog
 - insulation and temperature control for different seasons, weather and exposure
 - lighting, to include natural daylight, dark sleeping area, electric lighting
 - entryways, including ease of access for older dogs and high doorways for dog handlers
 - cleanliness, e.g. cleaning access, washable surfaces
 - ventilation, e.g. air inlets, no draughts
 - security, e.g. lockable, no escape routes, dogs feeling safe
 - provision for bitches that are pregnant, whelping, or feeding pups.

B2 Managing the health of working dogs

- Requirements, approaches and records relating to working dog general care and health management:
 - nutrition for dogs at different life stages, including puppy, adult, senior, pregnant bitches
 - working season diets and non-working season diets
 - exercise requirements and regimes.
- Application of simple health treatments to dogs by handler, including:
 - worming programmes, e.g. anthelmintic use and application
 - treatments for physical wounds such as cuts, breaks, punctures, e.g. cleaning, applying topical treatments, bandaging
 - common medicines needed by working dogs, e.g. anthelmintic medicine, antibiotics, anti-inflammatory.
- Care, storage and use of medical equipment, e.g. syringes, bandages, Elizabethan collars.
- Recognising when professional healthcare is required, e.g. veterinary surgeon.
- Professional healthcare needs and records, e.g. vaccination programmes for kennel cough and tetanus.

Learning aim C: Plan for the training of dogs working in a countryside role

C1 Working safely with dogs

Processes to ensure the safety of dog and handler when working with dogs.

- Equipment types, uses, advantages and disadvantages:
 - personal protective clothing (PPE), e.g. boots, gloves
 - restraint equipment, e.g. collars, leads, muzzle.
- Dog behaviour:
 - dog aggression, potential causes and signs
 - managing aggression to meet the safety of dog and handler
 - submissiveness and working dog confidence, e.g. danger from other dogs, unpredictable behaviour when threatened.

C2 Dog training theories and methods

The influence of learning theories in determining modes of training, to include:

- classical conditioning, e.g. Pavlov's dogs
- behavioural and operant conditioning, e.g. Thorndike and Skinner:
 - association of stimulus with response
 - positive reinforcement, including:
 - use of positive attention, e.g. physical contact, verbal and physical praise
 - healthy rewards and treats
 - play as payment after a good training session
- social learning:
 - socialisation of puppies, including introduction to:
 - men, women and children of different sizes and builds
 - animals, including other dogs, animals involved in working roles, e.g. sheep, ferrets, pheasants
- habituation:
 - habituating puppies to new environments such as new spaces, e.g. open and enclosed, vehicles, water
- sensitisation, e.g. blank firing pistol
- training aids with associated benefits and drawbacks:
 - sound-making equipment, e.g. whistle, clickers
 - human sources such as voice, physical contact and body language
 - retrieval toys, e.g. stick, ball, dummy and dummy launcher

- factors to consider when selecting training aids:
 - understanding correct usage
 - impact on animal welfare, e.g. stress, pain
 - risks to handler
 - efficiency of learning
 - motivating role of positive reinforcement, e.g. food, toys, praise
 - ethical and moral issues, including use of positive punishment, e.g. loud noises
- establishing vocal, visual or other auditory commands:
 - general commands, e.g. come to call, sit, stay, heel
 - gun dog commands, e.g. fetch, drop
 - sheep dog commands, e.g. lie down, seek, come by, get away, walk on
- obedience:
 - ensuring working dogs are fit for the role
- inadequate training effects – negative behaviour, confusion, shyness, aggression.

C3 Planning dog training

Considerations when designing a training regime for a working dog for a specific role.

- Dog breed characteristics and traits, including strong-willed, bold, energetic, timid, aggressive.
- Stages of the dog's development, and its physical and mental capacity at each stage, e.g. attention span. Stages to include:
 - 8–15 weeks
 - 15 weeks–6 months
 - 6–9 months
 - 9–12 months
 - 12–18 months
 - 18–24 months
 - over 24 months.
- Condition of dog before training, e.g. rested and wakeful, healthy, fed and watered.
- SMART (specific, measurable, achievable, realistic, time-bound) training plans:
 - specific aims and objectives – overarching aims such as working role, e.g. retrieving, flushing, shepherding, and specific objectives, e.g. stay, fetch, lie down
 - measurable – stages of achievement that can be attained in given sessions
 - achievable – related to dog's or species' innate capacity, e.g. intelligence, natural behaviour, current skills
 - realistic – nature of task, trainer ambition and the ability of dog to willingly complete non-routine tasks
 - time-bound – duration of individual sessions and broader training programme, frequency of sessions.
- Training environment: advantages and disadvantages of space available, including planning for contingency issues, e.g. distractions from other users of the space such as people or animals.
- Selection of appropriate training methods and training aids.
- Post-training session activity and rewards.
- Measures to determine success of training session, including review of trainer's use of realistic aims and objectives, condition of dog, training environment, effective use of training aids, and consistency of approach.
- Planning for training regime modification when aims are not met.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Examine the suitability of dog breeds for working roles in the countryside		
A.P1 Explain working dog roles in the UK and their associated legislation.	A.M1 Discuss working dog roles in the UK and the importance of associated legislation.	
A.P2 Explain how breed types, history and traits relate to their suitability for specific working dog roles.	A.M2 Assess the suitability of dog breeds for specific working dog roles.	
Learning aim B: Investigate the health and welfare needs of dogs kept for countryside work		
B.P3 Explain the kennelling requirements of working dogs.	B.M3 Analyse the kennelling and health management methods required to provide for the health, welfare and safety of working dogs.	A.D1 Evaluate the suitability of different dog breeds to working dog roles, taking account of associated legislation.
B.P4 Explain approaches used to manage the health and welfare of working dogs.		B.D2 Review the kennelling and health management methods required to provide for the health, welfare and safety of working dogs.
Learning aim C: Plan for the training of dogs working in a countryside role		C.D3 Plan a safe, complex training regime to produce desired behaviours in a working dog, giving evidence of reasoned selection of training methods.
C.P5 Explain training methods used to prepare dogs for working roles.	C.M4 Assess training methods available to prepare dogs for working roles.	
C.P6 Plan a safe, simple training programme to produce a desired behaviour in a working dog.	C.M5 Plan a safe, complex training programme to produce desired behaviours in a working dog.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aims: A and B (A.P1, A.P2, B.P3, B.P4, A.M1, A.M2, B.M3, A.D1, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M4, C.M5, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of commonly used dog training equipment
- site visits to a range of businesses and dog trainers to see dogs working.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aims A and B

Learners use case studies of two contrasting working dog roles to examine the relationship between breed and working role, kennelling approaches, and health management.

For distinction standard, learners will use case studies to provide a thorough, detailed and accurate account of two different types of working dog roles from the unit content, exploring a comprehensive range of differences between the activities performed in these roles and linking them to the breeds selected to perform them.

Learners will consider specific breed traits that suit the breed to the role and provide a clear, logical and reasoned account of the ways in which the traits have been developed through selective breeding. They will demonstrate a detailed appreciation of the specific requirements of the job role with regard to UK legislation, including animal welfare for both dog and associated animals.

Learners will discuss in detail the different kennelling requirements for the dogs explored in their case studies, articulating reasons for differences in approaches and providing judgements as to the merits of those adopted in each case. Learners' accounts will include detailed consideration of the welfare needs of dogs at different life stages.

Learners will provide a detailed appraisal of the healthcare needs of the dogs in their case studies. They will provide comprehensive details of, and comment on, the responsibilities of dog handlers or dog managers in relation to feeding, exercise, first aid, equipment care and record keeping.

Learners will discuss the approaches to health management given as evidence in each case study, commenting on the similarities, differences, benefits and drawbacks of each. They will draw conclusions as to the effectiveness of the health management approaches discussed. Learners will show a clear appreciation of the difference between handler responsibilities in respect of dog health management and that of healthcare professionals.

For merit standard, learners will use case studies to contrast two different types of working dog roles from the unit content, exploring a range of differences between the activities performed in these roles and linking them to the breeds selected to perform them.

Learners will consider specific breed traits that suit the breed to the role and provide a detailed account of the ways in which the traits have been developed through selective breeding. They will demonstrate an understanding of the specific requirements of the job role with regard to UK legislation, including animal welfare for both dog and associated animals.

Learners will discuss the different kennelling requirements for the dogs explored in their case studies, exploring differences in approaches and providing reasoning for these differences. Learners' accounts will include a detailed consideration of the welfare needs of dogs at different life stages.

Learners must contrast the healthcare needs of the dogs in their case studies, detailing the responsibilities of dog handlers or dog managers in relation to feeding, exercise, first aid, equipment care and record keeping, and providing examples of approaches used in each case study, supplying reasons for any differences. They will show a clear understanding of the difference between handler responsibilities in respect of dog health management and that of healthcare professionals.

For pass standard, learners will use case studies to provide details of two different types of working dog roles from the unit content, referring to the main differences between role types and listing the breeds of dogs used in each. They will demonstrate some understanding of the specific requirements of the job role and will show an awareness of governing UK legislation, including animal welfare for both dog and associated animals.

Learners will consider why appropriate breeds are used for the different roles, citing the specific breed traits that suit the breed to the role. Learners will demonstrate knowledge by providing an account detailing how the traits have been produced through selected breeding of the dogs.

Learners will discuss the different kennelling requirements for the dogs explored in their case studies, looking at similarities and differences, and taking into account the welfare needs of dogs at different life stages.

Learners will examine the healthcare needs of the dogs in their case studies, detailing the responsibilities of dog handlers or dog managers in relation to feeding, exercise, first aid, equipment care and record keeping. They will demonstrate an understanding of the difference between handler responsibilities in respect of dog health management and that of healthcare professionals.

Learning aim C

Learners produce a SMART training plan for a working dog role, including a rationale detailing training plan decisions.

For distinction standard, learners will discuss the learning theories that inform the training methods used to prepare dogs for working roles, demonstrating a clear understanding of the causal link between training methods and the production of desired behaviours. They will clearly articulate the advantages and disadvantages of different approaches for given training outcomes through the consideration of the efficiency of the training method, the impact on dog welfare, and the welfare and safety of other animals associated with the role. Learners' conclusions will be thoroughly corroborated by the training plans they devise.

Learners will devise a complex training plan for a dog to perform in a working role, comprising a multi-staged training regime to elicit the desired behaviours necessary for a dog to perform a working role. Learners' plans will clearly demonstrate a comprehensive understanding of the behaviours required in all aspects of the chosen role.

Learners will produce this plan to incorporate the different stages of development from novice puppy through to a young dog. They will provide details of all necessary training locations in addition to training equipment, discussing its function in the plan. They will provide detailed accounts of the approaches taken by the trainer, such as the different methods used to give praise and rewards. Learners' plans will provide evidence that they have taken full account of the need to ensure the dog being trained is comfortable throughout the training process.

Learners' training plans will clearly demonstrate a forward thinking approach to the health and safety of trainers and other associated personnel.

For merit standard, learners will discuss the learning theories that inform the training methods used to prepare dogs for working roles, demonstrating an understanding of the link between training methods and the production of desired behaviours. They will consider the advantages and disadvantages of different approaches for given training outcomes, with reference to the efficiency of the training method, the impact on dog welfare, and the welfare and safety of other animals associated with the role. Learners' conclusions will be consistent with the training plans they devise.

Learners will devise a complex training plan for a dog to perform in a working role, comprising a multi-staged training regime to elicit the desired behaviours necessary for a dog to perform a working role. Learners' plans will clearly demonstrate their understanding of the main behaviours required in the chosen role.

Learners will produce this plan to incorporate the different stages of development from novice puppy through to a young dog. They will provide details of necessary training locations in addition to training equipment, discussing its function in the plan. They will provide accounts of the approaches taken by the trainer, such as methods used to give praise and rewards. Learners' plans will provide evidence that they have understood the need to ensure the dog being trained is comfortable throughout the training process.

Learners' training plans will clearly demonstrate an awareness of the need to consider the health and safety of trainers and other associated personnel.

For pass standard, learners will discuss the training methods used to prepare dogs for working roles, demonstrating an understanding of the link between training methods and the production of desired behaviours. They will provide limited information on the learning theories behind the training methods. Learners will discuss the processes involved in different approaches to training, showing consideration of the impact on dog welfare as well as the welfare and safety of other animals associated with the role. Learners will incorporate the methods discussed in their training plans.

Learners will devise a simple training plan for a dog to perform some of the basic behaviours required in a working role, comprising a number of discrete training sections that will result in simple behaviours such as sit, stay and heel. Learners' plans will address the rudimentary obedience required by the dog in the chosen role.

Learners will produce a plan to use at different stages of the dog's development, from novice puppy through to a young dog. They will list training equipment, giving its function, and approaches taken by the trainer, such as uses of praise and rewards. Learners' plans will provide evidence that they have understood the need to ensure the dog being trained is comfortable throughout the training process.

Learners' training plans will address some of the health and safety needs of trainers and other associated personnel.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors
- Unit 13: Gamekeeping
- Unit 15: Managing a Shoot.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 21: Controlling Firearm Safety in the Land-based Sectors

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop the skills to manage and handle firearms used in the land-based sector in line with codes of practice and legislative requirements.

Unit introduction

Firearms are used extensively in the land-based sectors for recreational and land-management purposes. Shooting accounts for significant employment either directly or indirectly through the conservation of landscapes. Firearm ownership and use in the UK is tightly regulated, and the licensing of firearms is strictly controlled. Those engaged in game and wildlife management, pest and predator control, and in recreational target shooting, must be proficient with a range of firearms, know which firearms and ammunition are appropriate, and clearly appreciate the importance of safe practice in firearm handling and use.

In this unit, you will learn about the types of firearms, ammunition and associated equipment commonly used in the land-based sectors, and be able to make appropriate selections based on their intended use. You will learn the ballistic properties of firearms and ammunition and the regulations and licensing that controls their use, transport and storage. You will be able to demonstrate safe handling and maintenance of firearms and will have the opportunity to develop your practical skills in firearm use.

This unit will benefit those seeking a career in countryside management in general and specialist firearms-related industries, including pest and predator control, deer or game management, and countryside recreation.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand the purpose, use and operating features of firearms in the land-based sectors
- B** Apply procedures used in firearm and ammunition management
- C** Demonstrate and review own handling and use of firearms in land management.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand the purpose, use and operating features of firearms in the land-based sectors	A1 Features of firearms and ammunition A2 Ballistics A3 Firearm selection and use	A report detailing research into firearm and ammunition usage in countryside management, including type and purpose, and related equipment.
B Apply procedures used in firearm and ammunition management	B1 Licensing and ownership of firearms and ammunition B2 Storage of firearms and ammunition B3 Transport of firearms and ammunition B4 Maintenance of firearms and ammunition	A portfolio of evidence detailing the safe handling and use of firearms and ammunition, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • storage, maintenance, transport • use in specified shooting activity • risk assessment • management of third-party firearm users.
C Demonstrate and review own handling and use of firearms in land management	C1 Managing shooting activities C2 Safe handling of firearms C3 Shooting safely and accurately	A report detailing legal requirements and procedures for the safe handling and use of firearms.

Content

Learning aim A: Understand the purpose, use and operating features of firearms in the land-based sectors

A1 Features of firearms and ammunition

Types of commonly used firearm and ammunition, and their form and function.

- Types of firearm:
 - shotgun, including gauges, e.g. .410, 12 bore; actions, e.g. break action, pump, auto; types, e.g. side by side, over, under and single barrel
 - rifle types, e.g. sporting, target; calibres, e.g. rimfire and centrefire
 - air rifle, including mechanisms, e.g. springer, pre-charged pneumatic (PCP) and CO₂; calibre, e.g. .177, .20, .22, and .25
 - others, e.g. black powder, humane slaughtering instruments, tranquiliser guns, handguns.
- Component parts:
 - firearm form, function and component parts for shotgun, rifle and air rifle
 - additional shooting-related equipment, to include telescopic sights, moderators, slings, night-vision equipment and lamps, breech flags, chokes, spotting scopes, bipods.
- Types of ammunition and their components, including projectiles, shot, pellets, cartridges cases, primers, wadding; propellant type.
- Variation in shotgun ammunition properties, including calibre, shot size, cartridge or casing length, projectile composition and design, e.g. bismuth, steel.
- Variation in rifle ammunition properties, including centrefire and rimfire, calibre, cartridge or case length, projectile composition and design, e.g. full metal jacket, expanding ammunition, target; legal requirements for specific use, e.g. deer, waterfowl.
- Variation in airgun ammunition properties, including calibre, type, composition and design, e.g. wadcutter, dome, flat head, non-lead types of pellets.
- Use of snap cases and magazines.

A2 Ballistics

Properties of internal, transitional, external and terminal ballistics.

- Internal ballistics, including ignition, pressure development, obturation, effect of rifling.
- Effect of moderators on transitional ballistics for rimfire, centrefire and shotguns.
- External ballistics, including projectile velocity, drop and path.
- Effect of wind, height difference and distance on ballistic behaviour.
- Terminal ballistics, including selection for terminal performance or stopping power.
- Misfires, hang-fires and procedures.
- Shotgun, chokes, chamber, length and pressure development.
- Maximum and effective range.
- Influence of ballistic properties on firearm, ammunition and moderator selection for intended use.

A3 Firearm selection and use

- Firearm use:
 - target shooting, including clay target
 - live quarry, including culling of species, pest and predator control, wildfowling and game shooting.
- Role of government and local authority departments significantly involved in shooting in the UK, e.g. Environment Agency, police forces.
- The role of other organisations and associations involved in shooting.
- Selection of firearm, ammunition and additional equipment to suit purpose, to include:
 - factors influencing selection, e.g. cost, certification, ballistics, intended use
 - legal requirements for specified shooting purposes, e.g. minimum calibres, shot type.

Learning aim B: Apply procedures used in firearm and ammunition management

B1 Licensing and ownership of firearms and ammunition

- Certification of firearm, shotgun and ammunition ownership.
- Legislation relating to the buying and selling of firearms and ammunition.
- Ethical issues relevant to firearm ownership and use, e.g. badger culling.

B2 Storage of firearms and ammunition

- Legislation and codes of practice for the storage of arms and ammunition.
- Methods for the safe storage and security of firearms and ammunition, including:
 - gun safes and armouries – construction, location, security
 - segregation of ammunition and firing mechanisms
 - environmental conditions for proper storage, e.g. humidity.

B3 Transport of firearms and ammunition

- Legislation and codes of practice for transporting arms and ammunition.
- Transporting firearms and ammunition by private and public transport.
- Overseas transport by UK and non-UK firearm owners.
- Use of security devices, including:
 - vehicle safes
 - trigger locks
 - carry cases and slip cases.

B4 Maintenance of firearms and ammunition

- Tools, materials and equipment used for routine firearms maintenance.
- Stripping down, cleaning firearms, shotguns, airguns.
- Assessing damage or wear, e.g. to barrel crown, stock, barrel, barrel bulges, chokes, actions, bolt and other signs of wear.
- Causes of damage, wear or poor condition of firearms and ammunition, e.g. exposure to damp, dust, improper use.
- Consequences of using poorly maintained, damaged or worn firearms and ammunition.

Learning aim C: Demonstrate and review own handling and use of firearms in land management

C1 Managing shooting activities

Health and safety issues, including:

- safety considerations at organised shoots, including static target and clay ranges, game shoots, stalking, rough shooting, wildfowling
- production and use of static risk assessments before shooting, and dynamic risk assessment in the field
- personal protective equipment (PPE), including ear defenders, eye protection
- general range and shoot rules and procedures to maintain safety
- validating competency and legal ownership in others:
 - recognition of commonly available training courses and qualifications
 - examination of firearm certification for lawful ownership and use
- permissions to shoot, including:
 - letters of authority
 - general, class and individual wildlife licences
- use of shooting plans for land management or recreational shooting, e.g. clay shooting, deer management, vermin control, rough shooting
- use of firearms by non-certificated users, e.g. estate rifles
- shooting insurance.

C2 Safe handling of firearms

Methods and procedures for handling firearms safely.

- Normal safety procedures when using firearms, including use of safety mechanism, segregation of ammunition, use of slip covers, checking for barrel obstructions.
- Moving over varied terrain and conditions:
 - identification of safe shooting zones, back stops and clear sky
 - muzzle awareness
 - constraints on shooting, including livestock, people, buildings, roads and paths.
- Negotiating obstacles, including gates, stiles, ditches, public roads.
- Passing firearms between users.
- Shooting at night or in buildings.
- Human physical and mental limitations to safe use, including tiredness, lack of concentration, effect of drugs or alcohol.

C3 Shooting safely and accurately

- Shooting safely in a variety of situations, to include:
 - target and clay ranges
 - live quarry shooting, including identification of species, kill zones, humane despatch
 - shooting in or near buildings and public rights of way
 - taking a safe shot, including dynamic risk assessment
 - following normal safety procedures, including action on hang-fires, misfires.
- Shooting accurately, including:
 - range, wind deflection, elevation and adjusting point of aim
 - stable shooting positions and use of slings, rests, bipods, sticks
 - shooting methodology, e.g. control of breathing, trigger pressure, target/foresight/back-sight alignment and focus
 - grouping, zeroing, patterning and use of shotgun chokes
 - recording results
 - adjusting point of aim, including aiming off and adjustment of sights.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand the purpose, use and operating features of firearms in the land-based sectors		
<p>A.P1 Describe types of firearms, ammunition and related equipment used for land-management and recreation.</p> <p>A.P2 Explain the ballistic properties of firearms and ammunition.</p>	<p>A.M1 Assess the suitability of firearms, ammunition and equipment for specified shooting purposes.</p>	<p>A.D1 Justify the suitability of firearms, ammunition and equipment for specified shooting purposes.</p>
Learning aim B: Apply procedures used in firearm and ammunition management		
<p>B.P3 Explain procedures and legal requirements for owning, storing, transporting, maintaining and using firearms and ammunition.</p> <p>B.P4 Apply correct storage, maintenance and transport of firearms and ammunition in given situations.</p>	<p>B.M2 Analyse the need for correct licensing, storage, maintenance and transport of firearms and ammunition, applying them in given situations.</p>	<p>B.D2 Evaluate the need for correct licensing, storage, maintenance and transport of firearms and ammunition, applying them in given situations.</p>
Learning aim C: Demonstrate and review own handling and use of firearms in land management		
<p>C.P5 Demonstrate safe handling and use of firearms for a specified shooting activity.</p> <p>C.P6 Explain effectiveness of own safe handling and use of firearms, and the management of others for a specified shooting activity.</p>	<p>C.M3 Demonstrate skilled handling and use of firearms for a specified shooting activity.</p> <p>C.M4 Analyse effectiveness of own safe handling, use of firearms, and the management of others for a specified shooting activity.</p>	<p>C.D3 Demonstrate proficient handling and use of firearms for a specified shooting activity, with a reasoned review of the effective safety management of firearms and of others.</p>

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, C.M4, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- a range of working firearms, including centre and rimfire rifle; shotguns, including 12 bore and a firearms certificate (FAC) rated air rifle
- ammunition of various types and calibres
- cleaning and maintenance tools, materials and fluids
- regulation storage for firearms and ammunition
- suitable terrain for firearms handling
- alive firing opportunities, e.g. rifle range, live quarry shooting, clay target range
- firearm licensed tutors.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners report on firearm types and uses, including centrefire rifle, shotgun, and either rimfire- or FAC-rated air rifle.

For distinction standard, learners must provide evidence of secure and comprehensive knowledge of the form, function and ballistic properties of a wide range of firearms from the unit content. They must give accurate and robustly reasoned arguments as to the suitability of the firearms to their appropriate purposes in land management and countryside recreation activities, including reference to governing legislation and codes of practice where appropriate.

For merit standard, learners must provide evidence of sound knowledge of the form, function and ballistic properties of a range of firearms from the unit content. Learners must demonstrate a considered understanding of the relationship between firearm types and properties, and their use in land management and countryside recreation activities. Where appropriate, learners will reference governing legislation and codes of practice.

For pass standard, learners must demonstrate an accurate knowledge of a range of firearm types commonly used for land management and recreational shooting, their component parts, ammunition and associated equipment. They will correctly categorise the uses for the firearms and ammunition discussed, using knowledge of ballistic properties and governing legislation and codes of practice to support their view.

Learning aims B and C

Learners provide evidence of the correct knowledge and application of firearms and ammunition handling and use.

For distinction standard, learners will articulate a clear and robustly reasoned understanding of the need and importance for the licensing and regulation of firearm and ammunition ownership, their storage, maintenance, transport and use.

In applying this understanding, learners will demonstrate the capacity to review firearms licences for compliance accurately and consistently, giving robust reasons for their assessments, and suggesting appropriate remedial action where applicable.

In applying correct procedures, learners must store firearms and ammunition correctly, equating elements of the required practice to ensure safe, legal and efficient use. This will include the thorough examination of firearms, ammunition, and equipment for damage, wear and condition. Learners will correctly identify and carry out appropriate, remedial action that does not require gunsmithing skills.

Learners will consistently select appropriate tools, equipment and fluids, and will efficiently strip down, clean, oil and assemble firearms, making appropriate adjustments, for example to sights. They will do this for a wide range of situations, including for less-familiar firearms, which may require additional research or expert advice. Learners will understand the causes and consequences of using poorly maintained, worn or damaged firearms and ammunition. They will give valid reasons for the consequences of improper storage of firearms and ammunition.

Learners will demonstrate confident and assured handling of firearms by consistently moving safely over varied terrain and negotiating obstacles, including the need to pass firearms to another person. They will demonstrate muzzle awareness, and identify safe shooting opportunities, recognising the need for backstops or blue sky. Learners will consistently and accurately identify and anticipate constraints on shooting, for example the proximity of roads.

Learners will demonstrate, for a specified shooting activity, that they can consistently make a safe shot using firearms, including a centrefire rifle or shotgun greater than .410 calibre, and rimfire- or FAC-rated air rifle. They will demonstrate that they can follow normal safety procedures when shooting, including action on misfires or hang-fires. In shooting safely, learners will also employ effective strategies to adjust their point of aim and improve their shooting accuracy.

Learners will review shooting situations of self and others for safe shots, giving reliable and valid reasoning at all times and complying with codes of practice and current legislation. They will suggest remedial action where unsafe handling of firearms or behaviour during a shooting activity is found, justifying their reasoning.

In reviewing the effectiveness of their handling and management of firearms for a specified shooting activity, learners will comprehensively interrogate their own performance, including the management of others, giving evidence of their consideration of contingency approaches to potential risks.

For merit standard, learners will show an appreciation of the need and importance for the licensing and regulation of firearm and ammunition ownership, their storage, maintenance, transport and use. Learners will provide evidence of their knowledge of the different types and classes of firearm and shotgun certificates, including clauses on licences that may vary their use, for example the use of moderators, expanding ammunition and permissions to shoot.

In applying this understanding, learners will demonstrate the capacity to review firearms licences for compliance and reach correct conclusions, showing their clear understanding of the need for the licensing and regulation of firearms and ammunition ownership, storage, transport and use.

Learners will understand the importance of the correct storage of firearms and ammunition, making the connection between this practice and safe, legal and efficient use. This understanding will be demonstrated in practice, including the examination of firearms, ammunition and equipment for damage, wear and condition.

Learners will strip down, clean, oil, and assemble firearms correctly and efficiently and make appropriate adjustments, for example to sights, in a range of situations, including an additional, similar firearm.

Learners will demonstrate methodical and consistent handling of firearms by demonstrating they can move safely over varied terrain and negotiate obstacles, including the need to pass firearms to another person. They will demonstrate muzzle awareness and identify safe shooting opportunities, recognising the need for backstops or blue sky. Learners will consistently identify constraints on shooting, for example the proximity of roads.

Learners will demonstrate, for a specified shooting activity, that they can consistently make a safe shot using firearms, including a centre fire rifle or shotgun greater than .410 calibre, and rimfire- or FAC-rated air rifle. They will demonstrate that they can follow normal safety procedures when shooting, including action on misfires or hang-fires. In shooting safely, learners will also employ strategies to adjust their point of aim to improve their shooting accuracy.

Learners will review shooting situations for safe shots, giving reliable and valid reasoning at all times and complying with codes of practice and current legislation. They will assess others' competent handling of firearms or behaviour during a shooting activity, demonstrating an understanding of any remedial action suggested.

Learners will review the effectiveness of their handling and management of firearms for a specified shooting activity, commenting on ways in which safety procedures, including risk assessments, contributed to the success of the activity.

For pass standard, learners will show an understanding of the correct procedures for the licensing and regulation of firearm and ammunition ownership, their storage, maintenance, transport and use.

In applying this understanding, learners will demonstrate an awareness of the different types and classes of firearms and shotgun certificates, and clauses on licences that may vary their use, for example the use of moderators, expanding ammunition and permissions to shoot. They will assess their own and others' licences, storage, transport and use for compliance, generally reaching correct conclusions, but there may be some omissions.

Learners will store firearms and ammunitions properly to ensure safe, legal and efficient use. They will use correct procedures to strip down, clean, oil, and assemble familiar firearms and make appropriate adjustments, for example to sights.

Learners' safe handling of firearms will be demonstrated competently and accurately by their safe movement over varied terrain, negotiation of obstacles, and safe passing of firearms to another person. They will demonstrate muzzle awareness and identify safe shooting opportunities, recognising the need for backstops or blue sky. Learners will identify constraints on shooting consistently, for example the proximity of roads, and will recognise when a safe shot is possible.

Learners will demonstrate, for a specified shooting activity, that they can consistently make a safe shot using firearms, including a centre fire rifle or shotgun greater than .410 calibre, and rimfire- or FAC-rated air rifle. They will demonstrate that they can follow normal safety procedures when shooting, including action on misfires or hang-fires, and can review the outcome of their own shooting to adjust their point of aim.

Learners will review the effectiveness of their own and others' handling of firearms, or behaviour during a shooting activity, commenting on ways in which safety procedures contributed to the success of the activity.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Work Responsibilities
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops involving staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local land-based organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 22: Freshwater and Wetland Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop skills in surveying and in the practical management of freshwater and wetland habitats in order to increase biodiversity.

Unit introduction

Both freshwater and wetland habitats are made up of a complex combination of features. Flora, fauna, water type, water pH, soil type and location all interact to produce widely different environments.

In this unit, you will investigate the specific ecological characteristics of different habitats and develop the skills to recognise and understand freshwater and wetland habitat features. You will explore different methods of surveying and monitoring wetland habitat characteristics in order to assess the level of biodiversity. You will survey and monitor areas, producing formal reports on changing biodiversity within habitats.

This unit will help you to progress to a range of countryside management roles in areas such as upland, moor, river, lake and coastal management. You will learn about the management tasks required for employment in fisheries, bird reserves, river keeping and saltmarshes, in roles such as river keeper, warden and fisheries keeper. This unit will also help you to progress to a higher education course, for example a degree in conservation and environmental science.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Investigate freshwater and wetland habitats to determine their ecological characteristics
- B** Carry out surveys of freshwater and wetland habitats to assess biodiversity
- C** Carry out freshwater and wetland habitat management tasks to promote biodiversity.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Investigate freshwater and wetland habitats to determine their ecological characteristics	A1 Lentic ecology A2 Lotic ecology A3 Wetland ecology	A report investigating the main ecological features of these habitats, species adaptation and interspecies links.
B Carry out surveys of freshwater and wetland habitats to assess biodiversity	B1 Freshwater and wetland surveys B2 Reporting and interpreting results B3 Management planning	Portfolio of practical evidence to include evidence of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • carrying out surveys to assess biodiversity • a management plan • carrying out habitat management tasks.
C Carry out freshwater and wetland habitat management tasks to promote biodiversity	C1 Management tasks C2 Impact of management tasks	

Content

Learning aim A: Investigate freshwater and wetland habitats to determine their ecological characteristics

A1 Lentic ecology

Still freshwater components, including size, purpose, characteristics, water sources, benefits, inherent issues or problems, e.g. sediment infilling, nitrate run-off.

- Freshwater types, their characteristics, sources, purpose, legislation and value to man, the environment and business:
 - ponds
 - lakes
 - reservoirs
 - canals.
- Lentic wildlife, their individual adaptations, life cycles, migration patterns, feeding habits and their relationship to and effects on other flora and fauna with regard to food chains, habitat and behaviour – to include:
 - fish, e.g. brown trout, rudd and Koi
 - amphibians, including newts, toads, frogs
 - birds, including mallard, moorhen and heron
 - reptiles, including snakes, e.g. adders and grass snakes, and lizards
 - mammals, e.g. shrew, water vole and American mink
 - invertebrates, e.g. flies, molluscs and larvae
 - plants, e.g. sedge, water lilies and marsh marigold.

A2 Lotic ecology

Running freshwater components, including size, purpose, characteristics, water sources, benefits, inherent issues or problems, e.g. erosion.

- Freshwater habitats:
 - streams, e.g. chalk and shale
 - tributaries
 - rivers, e.g. tidal, alluvial, bedrock
 - waterfalls.
- Lotic inhabitants (native, non-native, and invasive species), their life cycles, migration patterns, feeding habits and their relationship with other flora and fauna with regard to food chains, habitat and behaviour – to include:
 - fish, e.g. eel, pike, topmouth gudgeon
 - amphibians, e.g. frogs, toads
 - birds, e.g. kingfisher, heron and oystercatcher
 - reptiles, e.g. snakes and lizards
 - mammals, e.g. otters, common seal, beavers
 - invertebrates, e.g. insects, crayfish, larva
 - plants, e.g. reedmace, willow, Himalayan balsam.

A3 Wetland ecology

Wetland biotic factors, including food webs, population booms and the effect of global warming, as well as the origins, historical uses and legislation behind different habitats.

- Wetland habitats:
 - salt marshes, e.g. pollution, flotsam and jetsam
 - fens, e.g. peat harvesting, heather burning, shooting with cartridges containing lead shot
 - blanket bogs, e.g. methane emissions, acidity fluctuation and poisoning of stagnant water.
- Wetland inhabitants and how they feed, breed and live within the different wetland habitats as well as their relationships with each other – to include:
 - fish, e.g. bitterling, roach
 - amphibians, e.g. smooth newt, common frog
 - birds, including birds of prey, e.g. marsh harrier; waders, e.g. curlew, heron, snipe; water fowl, e.g. teal, wigeon, mallard
 - mammals, including mustelids, e.g. otters, stoats, mink; rodents, e.g. voles, shrews, rats; foxes and bats
 - invertebrates, e.g. water hoglouse, North American flatworm, zebra mussel
 - plants, e.g. water soldier, bladder wort, Nuttall's waterweed.
- Wetland abiotic factors, including pollutants from farming, hunting and the general public as well as the origins, uses and legislation behind different habitats.
- Soil type, e.g. clay, sand, silt.
- Geology, e.g. rock type, altitude and other features such as glacial valleys, mountains and beaches.
- Creation or modification, e.g. irrigation, drainage or habitat production.
- History, e.g. changing purposes, pollution, farming methods.

Learning aim B: Carry out surveys of freshwater and wetland habitats to assess biodiversity**B1 Freshwater and wetland surveys**

Considerations and factors affecting freshwater and wetland habitat surveys and their planning.

- Seasonality:
 - run-off factors, e.g. farm fertilisers in spring, rainfall, freezing conditions in winter
 - wildlife, e.g. feeding time, breeding time and hibernation.
- Equipment:
 - traps, e.g. pitfall, emergence, pooters
 - visual aids, e.g. binoculars, cameras, microscope
 - measuring instruments, e.g. thermometer, tape measure, pH meter; quadrat
 - personal protective equipment (PPE), e.g. boots, gloves, waterproofs, first-aid kit.
- Legislation and codes of practice:
 - Environment Act 1995
 - Water Framework Directive 2000
 - Habitats and Birds Directives
 - Ramsar Convention
 - UK Biodiversity Action Plans.
- Survey methods:
 - trapping and tagging wildlife, e.g. using a fish trap, building a pitfall trap, safely tagging birds
 - observational, e.g. animals tracks, droppings, nesting sites; kick sampling, pond dipping
 - investigative: soil sampling, e.g. type, pH; water sampling, e.g. temperature, chemical, population changes, traffic, biological oxygen demand
 - transect surveys: diarised records, plant identification.

B2 Reporting and interpreting results

Methods, approaches and required information when providing the results of surveys.

- Visual characteristics:
 - measuring latitudinal/longitudinal dimensions
 - measurements, including length, breadth, depth, area, volume
 - cross-sectional diagram production
 - temperature
 - flow
 - conservation systems in place
 - soil type
 - riverbed type, e.g. chalk, flint
 - biological characteristics, e.g. presence of vegetation, aquatic invertebrates, vertebrates.
- Chemical characteristics:
 - pH
 - presence and level of chemical constituents, e.g. oxygen, ammonia, nitrogen, phosphate, metaldehyde.
- Comparing and analysing data: over time, from other sources.
- Reporting conventions:
 - aim, e.g. what is the point of the experiment
 - scenario, e.g. where is the experiment taking place
 - hypothesis, e.g. what are the practitioners expecting to happen
 - survey methods, e.g. what measures are used to collect data
 - results, e.g. what happened
 - interpretation of results, e.g. graphical representation of results; bar, line and scatter graphs
 - conclusion, e.g. what happened and why
 - evaluations, e.g. are the results in line with boundaries set in place to manage health, safety and continued harmony of the scenario, e.g. have released species taken off
 - recommendations, e.g. introduce a species, eradicate a species, provide extra water cleaning plants.

B3 Management planning

Factors to consider when producing management plans.

- Aims, objectives and expected outcomes of the management tasks, e.g. what needs to be achieved, steps to take towards meeting the aims and objectives.
- Ecological considerations in relation to the purpose of developing the habitat, e.g. what is the point of reducing water flow, why introduce a new species.
- Timing and importance of timing of operations.
- Seasonal considerations, including weather, access, wildlife population peaks and troughs.
- Contingency planning for poor weather, staff absence, unfavourable ground conditions, unavailable or faulty machinery and dealing with problems and issues.
- Recognising areas requiring management.
- Interpreting surveys.
- Risk assessment and planning, including PPE, first aid, training and licensing.
- Financing:
 - equipment cost, e.g. efficiency, quality, cost-effectiveness
 - labour, e.g. skilled, unskilled volunteers
 - consumable resources: tree guards, fence posts, nails.
- Sustainability, including environmental impact, use of recycled/recyclable resources.

- Working with wetland associated organisations, e.g. grant availability, restrictions:
 - Environment Agency (EA)
 - Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA)
 - Natural England
 - Scottish Natural Heritage (SNH)
 - Countryside Council for Wales (CCW)
 - Environment and Heritage Service Northern Ireland (EHSNI)
 - Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (RSPB).

Learning aim C: Carry out freshwater and wetland habitat management tasks to promote biodiversity

C1 Management tasks

- Regeneration, to include:
 - planting native species to benefit native wildlife that feeds or lives on it, e.g. trees, shrubs, undergrowth
 - bank management to create habitat opportunities, e.g. building up with faggots, willow, reeds
 - releasing minority native species to increase wild populations, e.g. fish, birds, invertebrates
 - habitat development, e.g. bird boxes (owl, tit, swift), bat boxes, fish hides, reed beds
 - grazing livestock, including stocking density, breed type
 - coppicing, promoting other plants to grow.
- Water management: flooding, draining, dredging.
- Clearing and removal:
 - removal of dangerous trees, saplings, invasive undergrowth
 - weeding, e.g. sycamore, Japanese knotweed, Himalayan balsam.
- Pest control, e.g. use of pesticide for rats, grey squirrels, control of signal crayfish.

C2 Impact of management tasks

- Monitoring the impact of work carried out:
 - tree planting, e.g. roots drying an area, strengthening banks, fish hides
 - habitat production, e.g. increased population, increased predators affecting other populations, new species to area
 - water quality, e.g. grazing livestock manure, poisons from pest control, quality increase from filtering plant introduction
 - pest control, e.g. non-target species, increased food availability, food web developments.
- Evaluating the impact of work carried out against intended outcomes:
 - finding out whether the requirements of the habitats have been met
 - effectiveness of habitat management tasks
 - measuring actual outcomes against planned outcomes, e.g. inspection and monitoring areas
 - impact of habitat management tasks and the link to promoting biodiversity
 - how the review process can inform future strategies – lessons learned, identified improvements, recommendations for improvement.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Investigate freshwater and wetland habitats to determine their ecological characteristics		A.D1 Evaluate the ecology of a lentic and a lotic habitat, discussing the interspecies links of commonly found flora and fauna.
A.P1 Explain the main ecological features of a lentic and a lotic habitat. A.P2 Explain the importance of species adaptations to freshwater and wetland habitats.	A.M1 Discuss detailed ecological features of a lentic and a lotic habitat and how different species affect them.	
Learning aim B: Carry out surveys of freshwater and wetland habitats to assess biodiversity		B.D2 Perform complex surveys of a lentic and a lotic habitat to produce a comprehensive plan for the management of freshwater habitats based on an evaluation of own survey results.
B.P3 Perform simple surveys of a lentic and a lotic habitat. B.P4 Produce a simple plan for the management of a lentic and a lotic habitat based on own survey results.	B.M2 Perform complex surveys of a lentic and a lotic habitat. B.M3 Produce a detailed plan for the management of a lentic and a lotic habitat based on an analysis of own survey results.	
Learning aim C: Carry out freshwater and wetland habitat management tasks to promote biodiversity		C.D3 Perform efficient, complex habitat management tasks for a lentic and a lotic habitat, evaluating the anticipated impact on promoting biodiversity.
C.P5 Perform simple management tasks for a lentic and a lotic habitat to promote biodiversity. C.P6 Explain contribution of habitat management tasks to promoting biodiversity.	C.M4 Perform complex management tasks for a lentic and a lotic habitat to promote biodiversity. C.M5 Assess anticipated impact of habitat management tasks on promoting biodiversity.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, B.M3, C.M4, C.M5, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- lentic and lotic environments
- surveying equipment for water habitats such as nets and traps
- PPE specific to working in a wetland environment such as waders and warm clothing.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners report on the ecological characteristics of lentic and lotic habitats.

For distinction standard, learners will demonstrate a thorough and accurate understanding of the ecological characteristics of a lentic and a lotic habitat.

Learners will draw valid conclusions and make judgements in relation to the ecological characteristics and their role in shaping the habitats and providing a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna. They will make consistently relevant, specific interspecies links and show insight into the significance of the relationships between flora and fauna in both freshwater and wetland habitats.

For each of the two habitats learners will consider, in detail, the ways in which one species of flora and one species of fauna has adapted to the environment. They will demonstrate a depth of understanding as to how these species have adapted to the habitat's biotic and abiotic conditions.

Learners will show both depth and breadth of understanding of the geology of the habitat, making clear and relevant links to the history or creation of the particular habitat, including how the habitat has changed or developed over time in relation to weathering, global warming, ice ages and any other environmental factors.

Learners will use accurate and appropriate terminology throughout.

For merit standard, learners will demonstrate a clear understanding of the ecological characteristics that are found in a lentic and a lotic habitat. They will show how the ecological characteristics shape the habitats and provide a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna. They will make generally relevant references to the effects of a variety of species in both freshwater and wetland habitats.

For each of the two habitats, learners will consider in some detail the ways in which one species of flora and one species of fauna has adapted to the biotic and abiotic factors within their environment.

Learners will show breadth and some depth of understanding of the geology of the habitat, making mostly relevant links to the history or creation of the particular habitat, including how the habitat has changed or developed over time in relation to some environmental factors.

Learners will use appropriate terminology when discussing physical processes.

For pass standard, learners will demonstrate a basic understanding of the ecological characteristics that occur in a lentic and a lotic habitat. They will show a realistic but undeveloped awareness of how the ecological characteristics shape the habitats and provide a dynamic environment for a range of flora and fauna.

For each of the two habitats, learners will give a limited explanation of the significance of species adaptations to the environment, referring to one species of flora and one species of fauna in their explanation.

Learners will make some relevant references to the geology and history of the habitat, including some of the environmental factors that have helped to create the environment.

Learners will use some relevant terminology but there may be omissions.

Learning aims B and C

Learners produce a portfolio showing their surveying, planning and management of a lentic and a lotic habitat, aiming to assess and promote biodiversity.

For distinction standard, learners will conduct accurate and thorough habitat surveys, demonstrating a conscientious awareness of safety in the risk assessment planning, and of potential changes to risks to themselves and others as the surveys are carried out. They will follow processes proficiently, using equipment accurately and safely. Learners will show insight in assessing biodiversity when carrying out a survey. In addition to identifying common species present, they will use identification keys to skilfully identify species that may be less common, where present.

Learners will carry out a thorough review of their survey results in order to produce a comprehensive and detailed habitat management plan for one of the habitats they surveyed. They will give consistently logical justifications for recommendations made in the plan. This will include comprehensive aims and objectives, a clear plan linked to flora and fauna and targeted species, a realistic suggested timeframe to meet the objectives, and clear suggestions for improvements that are fully relevant based on survey findings. Learners will provide convincing evidence that their plan will address specific relationships within the freshwater and wetland habitats.

Within the limits of their own responsibility, learners will actively promote the safety of self and others throughout habitat management tasks, anticipating dangers and acting accordingly. They will prepare and operate tools and equipment safely and to a standard that reflects best workplace practice. Habitat management tasks will be conducted thoroughly throughout.

The habitat management tasks learners carry out will link specifically and clearly to the promotion of biodiversity. Learners will demonstrate an in-depth understanding of the complex links between the tasks undertaken and the impact on habitat ecology, providing consistently relevant examples of the abiotic and biotic consequences, such as changes in temperature, humidity and light, and the impact on wildlife. Learners will show insight in predicting the impact their tasks will have on the environment and, specifically, the relationships within that environment.

For merit standard, learners will carry out habitat surveys safely and efficiently, assessing risks before and during the survey. They will demonstrate competency and accuracy in their use of survey equipment and in identifying species present, including, where present, species that may be less common. Learners will show clear awareness of the role of assessing biodiversity when carrying out a survey. They will report the findings of their survey using mostly accurate data presented in an appropriate form.

Learners will make clear, reasonable, analytical judgements on the outcomes of their survey to produce a detailed habit management plan for one of the habitats they surveyed. This should include developed aims and objectives, the overall purpose of the plan and it should be structured appropriately. The given timescale to meet the objectives will be generally logical and realistic.

Learners will work safely and show a clear awareness of potential dangers to themselves and others, within the limits of their responsibility. They will prepare and use required tools and equipment safely and competently. Learners will carry out tasks in a way that ensures generally efficient use of time and resources, with clear reference to the brief.

The habitat management tasks carried out by learners will link clearly and appropriately to the promotion of biodiversity. Learners will demonstrate breadth and some depth of understanding of connections between the tasks carried out and the potential impacts on the habitat ecology. Learners will reflect on the approaches they used and make clear connections to their impact on promoting biodiversity within the habitats, with mainly relevant recommendations for improvement.

For pass standard, learners will carry out habitat surveys safely and competently, planning for risks from tides, rock falls, and other sources of danger. They will correctly use surveying equipment and methods, and identify the majority of the species present. Learners will show limited but realistic awareness of the role of assessing biodiversity when carrying out a survey. They will report the findings of their survey, presenting data in an appropriate form and interpreting it appropriately.

Learners will use key aspects of their survey results to produce an outline management plan that will be appropriate but limited in scope for one of the habitats they surveyed. Learners will produce basic aims and objectives, which are realistic and based on the habitat surveyed, although some minor irrelevancies may occur. The given timescale to meet the objectives will be realistic.

Learners will carry out habitat management tasks safely and competently within the limits of their responsibility, which will include assessing the site for trip hazards and other dangers. Learners will use appropriate PPE, such as gloves or suitable footwear. They will carry and use required tools and equipment safely and appropriately, taking reasonable steps to ensure that others are not in danger from their activities. On completion of the task, learners will safely remove and store tools and equipment, and dispose of waste materials appropriately.

The habitat management tasks carried out by learners will link generally to the promotion of biodiversity. Learners' explanation of the link between the tasks carried out and the impact on biodiversity will be undeveloped or generic in parts.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities
- Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in Land-based Sectors
- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors
- Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses
- technical workshops with staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local countryside organisation staff as mentors.

Unit 23: Applied Ecological Management

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners will develop skills in environmental management of resources and in the production of management tools for development, using theoretical and real-life scenarios.

Unit introduction

To meet the needs of the growing population, land development in the UK is unavoidable and space is in decline. Managing the impact of development projects on natural ecosystems and resources is an important activity in environmental and engineering science. It is the role of the ecological consultant to provide ecological information to decision makers. The reliability of that information is crucial for making the correct ecologically- and economically-based decisions.

In this unit, you will develop your understanding of the ecological management role. You will carry out components of an Ecological Impact Assessment (EcIA), explore optimum methods of ecological management, and present information in formats to enable best-case decisions.

Completion of this unit will prepare you for work in the private sector, either working independently or within a larger organisation, carrying out ecological audits and infrastructure planning. You can also progress to higher education in Environmental Law (BSc), Environmental Engineering (BSc), Resource Management (BSc) or Ecology and Wildlife Conservation (BSc).

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand the legislation and processes used in the management of environmental assets
- B** Understand the framework of impact assessments for managing land developments
- C** Plan and carry out an Ecological Impact Assessment.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand the legislation and processes used in the management of environmental assets	A1 Ecosystem services A2 Basis of global ecosystem stewardship A3 UK resource management	A report on the role of environmental stocktakes and purpose of environmental stewardship.
B Understand the framework of impact assessments for managing land developments	B1 Policies, regulations and processes B2 The Ecological Impact Assessment (EcIA) process B3 Components of an ecosystem assessment	Production of a professional Ecological Impact Assessment (EcIA) for a hypothetical development.
C Plan and carry out an Ecological Impact Assessment	C1 Scoping and baseline C2 Surveying and metrics C3 Ecological Impact Assessment documents	

Content

Learning aim A: Understand the legislation and processes used in the management of environmental assets

A1 Ecosystem services

The benefits and characteristics of ecosystem services, and the economic argument for environmental protection.

- The UK National Ecosystem Assessment (2011): purpose, stakeholders, findings.
- Environmental stocktakes of the UK's broad habitats: areas of enclosed farmland, areas of mountains, areas of moorlands and heaths, areas of semi-natural grasslands, areas of woodlands, areas of freshwater/open water, wetlands and floodplains, large urban areas, the coastal margins, the UK territorial marine waters.
- Ecosystem services, including:
 - provisioning services, e.g. food, water, fibre
 - regulating services, e.g. flood regulation, water storage and release
 - cultural services, e.g. history, science and education
 - supporting services, e.g. soil regulation, production of atmospheric oxygen, water purification.
- Environmental cost of urbanisation: urban heat islands, species loss, fragmentation.
- Drivers for urbanisation: population growth, food production, housing demand, roads and infrastructure, flood prevention, energy acquisition.
- Total Economic Value (TEV) framework: use value, non-use value, option value, existence value.

A2 Basis of global ecosystem stewardship

The global policies framework in resource management.

- National and international legal systems: concepts and applications, including common law, civil law, customary law, religious law.
- Creation of UK legislation:
 - legislative processes, bills, House of Commons, House of Lords, White Papers
 - departments and roles, including Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra); Secretaries of State, e.g. Secretary of State for Transport, Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government, Secretary of State for Environment.
- In situ versus ex situ conservation: zoos, seed banks, protected areas.
- Species approach: species applied legislation, key targeted species to obtain interest.
- Ecosystem approach: holistic management, protected habitats, Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI).
- International Policy for Ecosystem Protection development and aims, including:
 - Convention of Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (1971)
 - Convention Concerning the Protection of the World's Cultural and Natural Heritage (1972)
 - Convention on the Conservation of European Wildlife and Natural Habitats (Bern Convention) (1979)
 - Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals (Bonn Convention) (1979)
 - Wild Birds Directive (79/409/EEC)
 - the Habitats Directive (92/43/EEC) on the conservation of natural habitats and of wild fauna and flora
 - United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) (commonly known as the Rio Earth Summit) (1992).
- Natura 2000; Special Areas of Conservation (SACs) and Special Protection Areas (SPAs).

A3 UK resource management

The UK resource management framework, and its relationship to EU and global policies.

- National Policy for Ecosystem Protection development and aims, including:
 - National Parks and Access to the Countryside Act 1949
 - Countryside and Rights of Way Act 2000 (CROW)
 - Nature Conservation (Scotland) Act 2004
 - Natural Environment and Rural Communities Act 2006 (NERC)
 - Offshore Marine Conservation Regulations 2007
 - Conservation of Habitats and Species Regulations 2010.
- Environmental audit: for business, for society, environmental reviews.
- Modern environmentalism: environmental ethics, e.g. Rachel Carson and the deep ecology movement, Greenpeace.
- Legal systems: case law, planning legislation, national legislation, international directives/conventions.
- International policy for management of natural resources, e.g. The Water Framework Directive (2000/60/EC), Environmental Liability Directive (2004/35/EC), Marine Strategy Framework Directive (2008/56/EC).
- National policy for management of natural resources, e.g. The Environmental Damage (Prevention and Remediation) (England) Regulations 2015, Environment (Wales) Act 2016, The Hedgerow Regulations 1997.
- National policy for water-based resources, e.g. The Water Environment (Water Framework Directive) (England and Wales) Regulations 2003, Marine and Coastal Access Act 2009.
- Powers to intervene, e.g. The Environmental Civil Sanctions (England) Order 2010, Infrastructure Act 2015.

Learning aim B: Understand the framework of impact assessments for managing land developments

B1 Policies, regulations and processes

The legal instruments of impact assessments.

- The Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA): purpose, role, history, e.g. The EIA Directive (85/337/EEC).
- The Ecological Impact Assessment (EcIA): purpose, history, role, relationship to EIA.
- Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA): aims and structure, relationship to EIA.
- Powers within the impact assessment: history, roles, e.g. The Infrastructure Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2009, Town and Country Planning Act 1990, The Town and Country Planning (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 2011.
- Policy for planning and development, history and current forms, e.g. Highways (Assessment of Environmental Effects) Regulations 1999, Planning Act 2008, The Harbour Works (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 1999.
- Localism Act 2011: Chapter 6: Planning, Planning gain.

B2 The Ecological Impact Assessment (EcIA) process

The steps towards ecological assessment.

- Phase one habitat surveys: role, significance to main study.
- Environmental statements: role in business, modes and rationales, e.g. life-cycle analysis (LCA), Multi-Criteria Decision Analysis (MCDA), cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA).
- Key principles of EcIA: avoidance, mitigation, compensation, enhancements.
- Scoping: purpose and objectives of scoping, timing, activities in scoping.
- Baselines: establishing the baseline, data for baselines, e.g. desktop studies, historic field surveys.
- The Leopold matrix: construction, application.
- Environmental risk assessment, including hazard identification; likelihood ratios; risk mitigation.

B3 Components of an ecosystem assessment

The sections and format of an assessment.

- Quality assurance/quality checks (QA/QC): measures, customer satisfaction.
- Use of introductions: descriptions of environments and sites, statement of purpose.
- The policy and legislation: necessity to be site specific, explanations of relevance to species/habitat present.
- Methodology for desktop study: importance of appropriate evidence, locations for informatics, e.g. NGO and government online data sets, historic surveys.
- Methodology for field work: use of guidance documents, e.g. International Standard (ISO) guidance, academic methodologies.
- Baseline ecological conditions, including:
 - description of features
 - impacts: changes that can occur
 - effects: outcome of changes
 - list of species and species groups: relevance of taxonomic listing.
- Cumulative effects and compensation measures: role of identification of long-term impacts, mitigation measures, environmental risk justification.
- Monitoring: the relevance of monitoring, relevance of identification of appropriate monitoring processes.
- Enhancement: links to mitigation, relevance of identification of appropriate enhancement processes.
- Conclusions: effective summery techniques, e.g. links to QA/QC, information-based decision making, role of management documents.

Learning aim C: Plan and carry out an Ecological Impact Assessment

C1 Scoping and baseline

Primary research stages.

- Preliminary ecological appraisal.
- Planning, including:
 - identification of stakeholders: engagement, QA/QC
 - identification of resources: survey equipment, method, e.g. methodological approaches, the scientific method
 - desktop studies, e.g. literature reviews, data mining.
- Objective setting: zones of influence, knowledge gaps.
- Reference zone identification: rationale, evidence-driven assessment.

C2 Surveying and metrics

Collecting and interpreting information:

- Appropriate techniques for static organisms, e.g. quadrat sampling, transect sampling, plotless sampling.
- Appropriate direct techniques for mobile organisms, e.g. capture, point counts, transect sampling.
- Appropriate indirect techniques for mobile organisms, e.g. calls, tracks, scatological studies.
- Describing data, e.g. graphical summaries, statistical tests, ecotype/habitat maps.

C3 Ecological Impact Assessment documents

Producing useful tools for decision makers.

- Document production: introduction, QA/QC measures, relevant policy, methodologies, baseline descriptions, impact measurements with Leopold matrix, mitigation measures, conclusions.
- Professionalism: choice of images, choice of data, use of descriptive data, maps, cover pages, links to stakeholders, indexes, appendices.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand the legislation and processes used in the management of environmental assets		A.D1 Evaluate ecosystem stewardship and the role of resource management for ecosystem services.
A.P1 Explain ecosystem services and the basis of global ecosystem stewardship. A.P2 Explain the role of resource management and conservation.	A.M1 Analyse ecosystem services and the importance of managing resources by ecosystem stewardship.	
Learning aim B: Understand the framework of impact assessments for managing land developments		B.D2 Evaluate the policies, regulations and processes involved in the management of natural resources impacted by development projects, using the tools and components within the EcIA process.
B.P3 Explain the range of policies, regulations and processes involved in the management of natural resources impacted by development projects. B.P4 Explain the process and the components of an EcIA.	B.M2 Analyse the range of policies, regulations and processes involved in the management of natural resources impacted by development projects using the components within the EcIA process.	
Learning aim C: Plan and carry out an Ecological Impact Assessment		C.D3 Produce a comprehensive and detailed professional EcIA for management by scoping and then baseline surveying.
C.P5 Plan and carry out a scoping and baseline assessment. C.P6 Produce a report for an EcIA and present findings and metrics.	C.M3 Produce a professional EcIA with findings and metrics from scoping research and baseline surveying.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, C.M3, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to a range of:

- commonly used ecological survey equipment
- maps, site descriptive data and/or historical information
- visits to sites for ecological assessments.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners report on environmental stocktakes and the purpose of environmental stewardship.

For distinction standard, learners will provide a detailed argument showing a good appreciation of the role of ecosystem services. They will use a range of examples for each of the different services, which will be concise and appropriate in showing the value these services play for social economics.

Learners will review the different approaches used in promoting ecosystems, breaking the approaches down logically, giving well-considered examples and information-based arguments. Learners will cite a range of legislation used nationally and internationally to protect and promote ecosystems, including descriptions of the organisations involved in the management operations.

Learners will articulate strong ethical arguments for environmental stewardship, with consolidated thinking, use of examples, and good information to strengthen their argument such as current reports and other scientifically appropriate literature. Learners will detail national and international commitments by the UK to environmental stewardship, reviewing the success or failure of the management strategy in the real world.

For merit standard, learners will provide a detailed appraisal of ecosystem services, and the role these services play for social economics. They will provide a range of examples for each of the services, and give value-driven arguments to their preservation.

Learners will provide a detailed analysis of the process of promoting and protecting ecosystems, using a good range of legislation that forms that protection in their discussion. Learners will give a range of case studies for this legislation in practice, including descriptions of the organisations involved in the management of the ecosystems.

Learners will show a good understanding of the ethical dimensions to environmental stewardship in the UK, by using well-supported examples and logical conclusions. They will give examples of national and international commitments by the UK to environmental stewardship, and give real world examples of this practice working.

For pass standard, learners will consider the role of ecosystem services, and the function of those services to society. They will give examples for each of the services, and present value-driven arguments for their preservation, although these may be undeveloped.

Learners will show basic knowledge of the approaches to promoting ecosystems, including some legislation that forms that protection. Learners will present a case study of this legislation in practice.

Learners will give a simple ethical summary of environmental stewardship in the UK, and include international and national commitments by the UK towards environmental management.

Learning aims B and C

Learners will use a hypothetical development to carry out an Ecological Impact Assessment, and create Ecological Impact Assessment documentation.

For distinction standard, learners will identify a baseline habitat, and give good and clear evidence such as literature, appropriate articles or previous studies to justify its use. Learners will select appropriate survey techniques, justifying their use with evidence such as literature, appropriate articles or previous studies, and collect sufficient data to create a broad assessment accurately.

Learners will present their findings in a structured, Ecological Impact Assessment format, with a detailed account of methods, including a desktop study method to show wider reading. Learners will include mitigation suggestions, environmental risk appreciation and some refined data presentation to show analysis of survey findings. Learners will provide a high level of professionalism in their report, and provide environmental risk assessments with additional information in an appendix.

Learners will provide a range of legislation that supports the need for ecological and environmental assessments specific to the study. Within the report, they will also give suggestions for enhancements that could be made to the hypothetical development to improve the ecosystem, during or after the development.

For merit standard, learners will identify a baseline habitat and review its effectiveness, giving a clear rationale for its use that is logical and sensible. Learners will identify justified methods for data collection, and collect sufficient data to create a broad assessment.

Learners will present their findings in a structured Ecological Impact Assessment format with accurate data that is well presented, including mitigation and monitoring suggestions. Learners will demonstrate a high level of professionalism in their report, and provide ecological risk assessments and additional information.

Learners will cite a range of legislation that supports the need for ecological and environmental assessments specific to the study within the report.

For pass standard, learners will identify a baseline habitat to assist their assessment, and will collect enough field data to support their report using appropriate survey techniques that they have identified.

Learners will attempt to present their findings in a regular Ecological Impact Assessment format, but there may be inconsistencies. They will however present accurate data. Learners will draw basic conclusions from their work, which will demonstrate some success in achieving a professional format, including a basic environmental risk assessment.

Learners will cite a range of legislation that supports the need for ecological and environmental assessment within the report, but it will not be directed to the survey specifically.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 4: Work Experience
- Unit 7: Woodland Management
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management
- Unit 19: Coastal Habitats Management
- Unit 24: Ecological Concepts.

Employer involvement

Centres can involve employers in the delivery of this unit if there are local opportunities to do so. There is no specific guidance related to this unit.

Unit 24: Ecological Concepts

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop skills in promoting and protecting biological diversity, practical data modelling and ecological reporting.

Unit introduction

Biological diversity, or biodiversity, is one of the most important concepts in the natural sciences; it is the range and distribution of species as well as their differences, both genetically and functionally, in the environment. Biodiversity principles and values cover conservation, evolutionary science and ecosystem management. Within the concept of biodiversity is the provision of a legal framework that sets the standards and quality measurements countries use to manage their biological resources. One method to understand biodiversity is the science of ecology. By studying species in the environment, and the evolutionary relationships that connect them to their environment and each other in the ecosystem, practical operations can be carried out to improve biological security and conserve living systems.

In this unit, you will learn the theories that form the foundation of ecology and the study of ecosystems. You will learn about the evolutionary mechanisms that create the behaviours and characteristics that form diversity in the natural world. You will explore the relationships that link the ecosystem through reproductive success to evolution and biodiversity. You will study the methods and practices used to conserve and manage natural processes and the species within the ecosystem. You will develop skills in producing the management tools used to improve and secure the future of ecological systems and biological diversity.

Completion of this unit will prepare you for employment in a variety of practical conservation and ecosystem management roles such as a ranger, ecological consultant and land planning surveyor. This unit can also help to prepare you for a biological or environmental degree, research science and environmental law.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand principles of ecological and evolutionary behaviour
- B** Examine principles of biodiversity and the practice of ecological management
- C** Plan and carry out ecological surveys to measure biodiversity and manage ecosystems.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand principles of ecological and evolutionary behaviour	A1 Reproductive success A2 Foraging dynamics A3 Distribution of populations	A report on ecological theories in relation to specific species and their ecosystem.
B Examine principles of biodiversity and the practice of ecological management	B1 Biological diversity B2 Ecological management	
C Plan and carry out ecological surveys to measure biodiversity and manage ecosystems	C1 Survey methods C2 Data analysis C3 Applied ecological reporting	Completion of an ecological survey, and a report with recommendations for biodiversity conservation management.

Content

Learning aim A: Understand principles of ecological and evolutionary behaviour

A1 Reproductive success

Concepts of reproductive success, and contributory factors.

- Life history theory.
- Biological fitness.
- Speciation: sympatric, allopatric, ring species.
- Genotypes: the genetic constitution of an organism.
- Phenotypes: interaction of its genotype with the environment.
- Breeding systems: breeding phenology, clutch size.
- Senescence.
- Semelparity and iteroparity (monocarpy and polycarpy).
- Fundamental and realised niches.
- Mating strategies, e.g. polygamy, monogamy.
- Parental investment:
 - *r* selection
 - *K* selection.

A2 Foraging dynamics

- Food webs:
 - generalist
 - specialist.
- Predation, to include:
 - true predators, grazers, parasites, parasitoids, cascades
 - predator-prey relationships, e.g. herd theory, 'boom and bust'
 - prey switching.
- Optimal foraging theory.
- Territorialism: types of territories, function.
- Environmental cues.
- Ecological traps, e.g. anthropogenic, natural.
- Evolutionary 'arms race'.

A3 Distribution of populations

Theories and characteristics of population distributions.

- Population dynamics: birth, death, immigration, emigration, recruitment.
- Grow of populations: density-dependent growth, density-independent growth.
- Competition, including interspecific and intraspecific competition.
- Competitive exclusion: consequences of competition, trade-offs.
- Ecosystem co-operation: symbiosis, mutualism, commensalism, kin selection, altruism.
- Distribution: random, uniform, clustered.
- Courtship, e.g. leks, displays.
- Meta-population dynamics: fragmentation, sources and sinks.
- Island biogeography.
- Ideal free distribution: resources, patches.
- Migration: relationship to breeding, relationship to foraging.
- Biogeography: cosmopolitan, endemic.

Learning aim B: Examine principles of biodiversity and the practice of ecological management

B1 Biological diversity

- Concepts of biological diversity and sustainability.
- Precautionary principle: principles of use, role of scientific consensus, fields of use.
- Natural threats to conservation: infectious disease, community changes.
- Human threats to conservation: climate change, population growth, deforestation, genetic pollution and hybridisation.
- Human methods of conservation, e.g. The Convention of Biological Diversity (CBD) and the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED)/Rio Earth Summit (1992), biological hotspots, e.g. their significance, the Global 200.
- Global protection of biological diversity, e.g. The Ramsar Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (1971), Natura 2000.
- European level protection of biological diversity, e.g. the Habitats Directive (92/43/EEC), Special Area of Conservation (SAC), Special Protection Area (SPA).
- UK level protection of biological diversity, e.g. Sites of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI), Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981.

B2 Ecological management

- Scales of diversity: alpha (α), beta (β), gamma (γ) diversity.
- Ecological economics:
 - willingness to pay, willingness to accept
 - cost-benefit analysis
 - property rights.
- Wildlife corridors: benefits of corridors, greenbelts, habitat fragmentation, green areas, e.g. hedgerows, parks, protected areas.
- Rewilding.
- Control of populations, e.g. culling, habitat maintenance.
- Biosecurity, e.g. invasive species, vectors for disease.

Learning aim C: Plan and carry out ecological surveys to measure biodiversity and manage ecosystems

C1 Survey methods

- Planning surveys, including:
 - time and location
 - planning tools, e.g. orthotrophic maps, vegetation indices, side-scan sonar
 - equipment, e.g. quadrats, binoculars, hand-microscope
 - health and safety, e.g. personal protective equipment (PPE), risk assessments
 - legal considerations, e.g. Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981, Countryside and Rights of Way Act 2000, Animals (Scientific Procedures) Act 1986
 - ethical consideration for species handling and removal, e.g. ethical reviews, the '3Rs'.
- Survey techniques:
 - mapping, e.g. GIS, grid references, topological features
 - data collection, e.g. plot sampling, mark and recapture, trapping
 - identification techniques, e.g. dichotomous keys, pictorial keys
 - informatics, storage of data and databases
 - data management, labelling samples, storage, fixing samples.

C2 Data analysis

- Displaying results, e.g. simple graphical summary.
- Data clearance with statistical assessment, e.g. mean, median, mode.
- Data interrogation and quality assessment, e.g. standard deviation, chi-squared (χ^2) test, Simpson's Diversity Index.

C3 Applied ecological reporting

- Reporting conventions: introduction, methods, results, analysis, discussion, including recommendations.
- Production and format of report: presentation, e.g. word-processed; supporting materials, e.g. maps, diagrams; appendices.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand principles of ecological and evolutionary behaviour		
A.P1 Discuss theories of foraging dynamics and how they relate to reproductive success. A.P2 Discuss theories of distribution of populations and how they relate to reproductive success.	A.M1 Assess the relationship between theories of foraging dynamics and the distribution of populations, and how they relate to reproductive success.	
Learning aim B: Examine principles of biodiversity and the practice of ecological management		
B.P3 Explain the concept and benefits of biodiversity. B.P4 Explain methods of biodiversity conservation management for an ecosystem.	B.M2 Analyse conservation strategies for biodiversity in an ecosystem.	
Learning aim C: Plan and carry out ecological surveys to measure biodiversity and manage ecosystems		C.D3 Produce a comprehensive ecological survey report using analysed data obtained from own ecological survey, to suggest biodiversity conservation improvements.
C.P5 Plan and carry out a survey for ecological assessment. C.P6 Present findings of an ecological survey using conventional reporting methods.	C.M3 Produce a detailed ecological survey report, from own ecological survey, with analysis of data and suggested biodiversity conservation improvements.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aims: A and B (A.P1, A.P2, B.P3, B.P4, A.M1, B.M2, A.D1, B.D2)

Learning aim: C (C.P5, C.P6, C.M3, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- survey equipment, for example tape measure, hand lens, quadrat
- site information, for example area maps, data charts
- a site or sites to perform an ecological survey, for example woodlands, river, sand-dune system
- identification and guide books related to survey sites.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aims A and B

Learners will report on evolutionary ecological concepts, in relation to a specific species and their ecosystem, and consider the importance of biological diversity, and the principles and the practice of ecological management.

For distinction standard, learners will explore a selected range of ecological evolutionary concepts with reference to the interrelationships within them. Learners will identify their own examples to support their explanations, and accurately describe the interactions between the theory, the selected species, and the biological and ecological relationships that have been identified. Learners will critique the concepts, making logical and sensible proposals using well-researched and displayed examples. They will make robust suggestions themselves, where appropriate, identifying evidence that does not follow the theory.

Learners will discuss biodiversity in detail, examining its relevance and importance, and the organisations connected to promoting it, including their history, and legal and managerial responsibilities. Learners will discuss the threats to biodiversity broadly, and using case studies and selected examples they will critique national and international responses to biodiversity loss, making sensible suggestions for improving situations and scenarios.

For merit standard, learners will provide information on a broad range of ecological evolutionary concepts. They will select their own examples of species to support and illustrate their explanations, giving an appropriate rationale for their choices, and detailing the biology and ecology of these chosen species. Learners will consider the merits of the theoretical concepts, and where appropriate they will make suggestions about perceived flaws in the science, including examples in nature.

Learners will clearly demonstrate an understanding of the need for biodiversity management, and the structure of its management, including national and international perspectives. They will present case studies as well as a range of examples to demonstrate their understanding of the complexity of biodiversity, and they will detail the pressures impacting on biodiversity from a small range of sources.

For pass standard, learners will select standard, teacher-provided, species examples to support their explanations of these concepts, and they will provide summaries of the species, including basic descriptions of their biology or ecology. Learners will note imperfections in the theory, and where appropriate they will give species examples that do not follow a specific scientific rule.

Learners will cover the origins and foundations of the concept of biodiversity in ecological management, and consider the reasons for ecological management and methods of management. They will give examples to support their discussion, and show basic knowledge of rationales for conservation.

Learning aim C

Learners will plan and carry out an ecological survey, producing a report with recommendations for biodiversity conservation management. Practical surveys may be carried out as part of a team. Planning and reporting will be carried out by learners individually.

For distinction standard, learners will thoroughly plan for their survey, by showing evidence of having researched the area, producing well-considered, survey-specific risk assessments, and bespoke or carefully considered species identification keys and field recording sheets. Learners will select appropriate equipment to obtain a wide range of data to meet the survey objective. Surveys will be completed legally and ethically, minimising the impact on the species present. Learners will demonstrate continuous awareness of safety issues, and complete the survey in an organised and efficient manner.

Learners will produce a report in a logical format with a thorough interrogation of the available data, including a range of supported material in well-structured appendices. Conclusions and recommendations will be fully considered and supported by a logical rationale based on the data produced by the survey.

For merit standard, learners' survey plans will contain appropriately modified risk assessments. They will select appropriate identification keys such as a dichotomous key, to increase accuracy of species identification. Learners will have carefully considered the equipment required to obtain a range of data that meets the survey objective. Surveys will be completed safely, legally and ethically, minimising the impact on the species present.

Learners will produce a report that includes a range of data and supporting evidence, such as maps and diagrams, which is carefully considered to produce accurate and reasonable conclusions. Learners will make sound recommendations supported by the survey findings.

For pass standard, learners will plan for their survey by producing simple, standard risk assessments and selecting appropriate but basic pictorial species identification keys, selecting the equipment required to meet the survey objective. Surveys will be completed safely, legally and ethically, minimising the impact on the species present.

Survey findings will be presented in an appropriate format with an accurate but limited analysis of data, and straightforward, generic recommendations for biodiversity maintenance or improvement.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats
- Unit 7: Woodland Management
- Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management
- Unit 19: Coastal Habitats Management
- Unit 23: Applied Ecological Management.

Employer involvement

Centres can involve employers in the delivery of this unit if there are local opportunities to do so. There is no specific guidance related to this unit.

Unit 25: Physical and Biological Environmental Processes

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners develop an understanding of the relationship between the physical and biological Earth systems, their importance to humans and the means to secure them for the future.

Unit introduction

An understanding of how Earth systems provide energy for life – from the interactions and interrelationships of atmospheric, oceanographic, geological and biochemical processes – is important for a wide range of roles, from practical countryside worker to academic researcher. These are large encompassing topics, immeasurably important and vastly significant to everyone, and everything living on this planet. Understanding the formation of biomes and their management is the foundation for learners wanting a career in countryside working and environmental sciences.

In this unit, you will explore these systems and build your knowledge of their value, their features, and their mechanisms. You will also explore sustainable themes as you build on your understanding, learning how to manage these processes for the benefit of future generations. You will learn about some of the fundamental topics, arguments and decisions that affect all life on planet Earth.

Completion of this unit is fundamental for a wide range of further studies in environmental sciences, including higher degrees. The unit will prepare you for a number of roles in the countryside sector, such as estate management, forestry and agriculture. The unit will also prepare you for roles in the sustainability sector, including waste and energy management in private businesses and enterprises.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Understand the physical processes that make up the Earth's systems
- B** Understand the biological processes involved in the Earth's biomes
- C** Examine the impact of human activity, and sustainability management, on the environment.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Understand the physical processes that make up the Earth's systems	A1 Atmosphere systems A2 Hydrosphere systems	A presentation detailing processes and characteristics of the Earth's systems.
B Understand the biological processes involved in the Earth's biomes	B1 The natural systems supporting the Earth's biomes B2 Earth's biomes B3 Living processes in biomes	A report detailing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the biological processes involved in the Earth's biomes, and their environments the impact of human activity on the environment and sustainability management.
C Examine the impact of human activity, and sustainability management, on the environment	C1 What is sustainability? C2 Impacts to concepts of sustainability C3 Sustainable management of the Earth	

Content

Learning aim A: Understand the physical processes that make up the Earth's systems

A1 Atmosphere systems

The mechanisms of the meteorological systems that link to Earth.

- Principles of climate processes:
 - Coriolis force and its impact to Earth's rotation and fluids, including basic fluid dynamics, e.g. thermodynamics, convection, entropy
 - heat distribution from the sun: sun and heat energy, Milankovitch cycles, latitude and longitude.
- Formation of the climate and weather, to include:
 - the distinction between climate and weather
 - seasons: their occurrence, resulting influence on the planet climatic patterns
 - atmosphere, e.g. biosphere, stratosphere, components of the atmospheric layers of Earth
 - hemisphere, e.g. Hadley cell, Polar cell
 - clouds: formation; types of clouds, e.g. cirrocumulus, stratocumulus
 - air pressure: wind direction, warm fronts, cold fronts
 - North Atlantic Oscillation.

A2 Hydrosphere systems

The mechanisms of the ocean and freshwater systems that link to Earth.

- Physical principles of the ocean, including:
 - heat retention: conservation of heat by water; regions of hot and cold climate patterns, e.g. poles, equator, Northern Tropics
 - density-driven circulation: process, relationship to chemical circulation
 - orbit of the planets, e.g. tides
 - tidal range.
- Processes of the ocean, to include:
 - the Earth's oceans, including names, distribution, environmental characteristics
 - oscillations, e.g. El Niño, La Niña
 - ocean currents, e.g. Gulf Stream, Brazil Current
 - Intertropical Convergence Zone
 - ocean gyres, e.g. North Atlantic Gyre, Indian Ocean
 - upwelling zones, e.g. Canary current, Benguela current
 - waves, e.g. deep-water waves, shallow-water waves
 - Heinrich events
 - total dissolved solids (TDS): salt, cations, anions.
- Freshwater systems, to include:
 - precipitation: links to chemical cycles, impacts on habitat formation
 - hydrological sources and sinks, e.g. solid, liquid and gaseous H₂O
 - salt pan
 - lentic systems, e.g. swamps, lakes
 - lotic systems, e.g. rivers
 - groundwater, e.g. aquifer.

Learning aim B: Understand the biological processes involved in the Earth's biomes

B1 The natural systems supporting the Earth's biomes

- Three modes of the Rock Cycle, e.g. metamorphic, sedimentary, igneous.
- Retention time in biogeochemistry, for:
 - biosphere
 - cryosphere
 - hydrosphere
 - pedosphere
 - atmosphere
 - lithosphere.
- Main biochemical cycles for life: carbon cycle, nitrogen cycle, phosphorus cycle.
- Role of certain biolimiting biochemicals, e.g. iron cycle, sulphur cycle.
- Water cycle, including:
 - water for photosynthesis
 - erosion
 - weathering.

B2 Earth's biomes

- Biomes: characteristics, size, communities and habitats within.
- Succession and climax.
- Classifying terrestrial biomes, including flora and fauna of:
 - forests, e.g. boreal coniferous forests, temperate rainforests, temperate deciduous forests
 - non-forest, e.g. tundra, desert.
- Classifying aquatic biomes, including flora and fauna of:
 - freshwater, e.g. lakes, streams
 - wetland, e.g. swamps, bogs
 - marine, e.g. coral reefs, deep sea.
- Classifying anthropogenic biomes, including flora and fauna of:
 - metropolitan areas, e.g. cities, parks
 - transportation and transmission corridors, e.g. small towns, infrastructure networks
 - agro-ecosystems, e.g. crop-influenced communities.
- Anthropogenic consumption and deconstruction of biomes, e.g. agriculture, mining, fisheries.

B3 Living processes in biomes

- The biochemistry for living systems:
 - light and photosynthesis
 - respiration.
- Production: autotrophic, primary production.
- Consumption: heterotrophic, primary consumption, secondary consumption, apex predator.
- Trophic pyramids, energy cycles, relationship to food web.
- Chemotropic: species roles, e.g. denitrifying bacteria.
- Biomass and measuring production, e.g. kilograms per metre squared, per year (kgC²Y).

Learning aim C: Examine the impact of human activity, and sustainability management, on the environment

C1 What is sustainability?

- Main areas of sustainable development:
 - ecology: environmental management, human consumption of resources
 - economics: environmental degradation and continuous economic growth; ecosystem services; sustainable businesses and green economies, e.g. waste reduction, sustainable energy, eco-socialist approach
 - politics: lifestyles and ethical consumerism; social justice; sustainable best practices, e.g. recycling, water treatment; sustainable living, e.g. ecovillages, Building Research Establishment Environmental Assessment Method (BREEAM), new urbanism.
 - Culture: Agenda 21, tourism.

C2 Impacts to concepts of sustainability

Features and characteristics of climate concerns, and associated issues.

- Climate change/global warming, including extreme weather events, e.g. 'The big freeze' in the winter of 2009–2010 in the United Kingdom.
- Emissions.
- Global transboundary pollution: acid rain, heavy metals, bioaccumulation, nuclear.
- Fossil fuels:
 - global use for energy, e.g. power
 - global use for manufacturing, e.g. plastics
 - energy security, e.g. peak oil.
- Water shortage, e.g. water scarcity, water stress.
- Overpopulation: change in populations over time, demographic perspectives.
- Extraction processes and their impacts:
 - non-living, e.g. mining, fertiliser
 - living, e.g. bush meat, fisheries, trophy hunting.
- Air pollution:
 - particulates, e.g. fungal spores, dust
 - gases, e.g. sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide, chlorofluorocarbons.
- Ways of reducing negative human impact:
 - 'environmentally-friendly' products
 - engineering and infrastructure.
- Sustainable energies: wind, hydroelectricity, energy from waste.
- Maximum sustainable yield.
- Organics.
- Fair trade.
- Role of science and education, e.g. 'information-based decision making', research councils.
- Meteorological Office (Met Office), The Hadley Centre.
- Tools for Earth management, including:
 - remote sensing
 - pressure charts
 - sea surface temperature (SST) maps
 - barometers.

C3 Sustainable management of the Earth

Features of strategies in place to manage sustainability.

- The United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) commonly known as the Rio Earth Summit (1992): history, Agenda 21.
- Kyoto Protocol (1992): history, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- The Paris Agreement (2016): strategies, targets.
- United Nations: role as 'mechanism for change', the veto system.
- Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra): funding, role of ministers, role of department.
- The Environment Act 1995:
 - Environment Agency
 - national parks of England and Wales
 - Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA)
 - air-quality management areas.
- Conservation NGOs, e.g. Greenpeace.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Understand the physical processes that make up the Earth's systems		A.D1 Discuss the Earth's atmospheric and hydrological systems, using the relationship of the meteorological and oceanographic processes.
A.P1 Explain the Earth's atmospheric system. A.P2 Explain the Earth's hydrological system.	A.M1 Assess the relationship of the atmospheric and hydrological systems within meteorological and oceanographic processes.	
Learning aim B: Understand the biological processes involved in the Earth's biomes		B.D2 Evaluate the importance of the natural systems concepts supporting the Earth's biomes. C.D3 Evaluate the sustainability of Earth and the systems in place to manage it.
B.P3 Explain the Earth's biomes and their supporting natural systems concepts.	B.M2 Analyse the importance of the natural systems concepts supporting the Earth's biomes.	
Learning aim C: Examine the impact of human activity, and sustainability management, on the environment		
C.P4 Explain sustainability and the issues that affect a sustainable Earth. C.P5 Explain the main areas of sustainable development and organisations put in place to address sustainable management on Earth.	C.M3 Assess sustainability for Earth and the management operations and organisations connected to it.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, C.P4, C.P5, B.M2, C.M3, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- the internet and/or technical textbooks on meteorology and ocean science
- presentation equipment such as: video recording equipment, desktop publishing applications, poster-sized sheets of paper (A3, A2).

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

Learners will create a presentation on the physical systems that make up Earth's processes. They can use a poster, oral presentation or a documentary-style video.

For distinction standard, learners' presentations will demonstrate a sophisticated understanding of the atmospheric structure of the Earth, with clear links to atmospheric systems and their function. Their presentations will make skilful use of a wide selection of drawings, examples and accounts, providing significant detail and a robust consideration of these physical systems of the atmosphere, and those systems that support meteorological mechanics.

Learners will demonstrate a sophisticated understanding of the hydrological structure of the Earth, clearly linking these to hydrological systems and function. Drawings, examples and accounts will be used effectively and creatively, and learners will give a detailed and robust description of hydrological systems connected directly to oceanographic mechanics.

Learners will analyse the complex links between meteorological and oceanographic systems, and the mechanics of natural planetary processes, articulating clearly their characteristics and features, including measurements where relevant. Learners will present information about changes to, and impacts on, the environment as a result of these systems and processes, supporting their answers with relevant appropriate physics, such as laws of thermodynamics.

For merit standard, learners' presentations will demonstrate a sound understanding of the atmospheric structure of the Earth. Explanations will be enhanced with a range of drawings, examples and accounts of atmospheric systems, and focusing both on those systems connected directly to atmospheric process and those that support meteorological systems.

Learners will demonstrate a sound understanding of the hydrosphere structure of Earth, utilising a wide range of drawings, examples and accounts, focusing on both hydrological systems connected directly to oceanographic systems, and those that support ocean processes.

Learners will make connections between the meteorological and oceanographic systems, observing the links between them and natural planetary mechanics. Learners will provide detailed, accurate accounts of the systems' characteristics and features.

For pass standard, learners' presentations will demonstrate a basic yet accurate understanding of the atmospheric structure of the Earth. They will provide drawings and examples to illustrate their explanations of these systems, focusing on atmospheric systems connected directly to meteorology, giving limited detail.

Learners will demonstrate a basic, yet accurate understanding of the hydrosphere structure of Earth through the provision of drawings, examples and explanations, focusing on those hydrological systems connected directly to the ocean's processes, giving limited detail.

Learning aims B and C

Learners write a report demonstrating their understanding of the Earth's biomes and environment, and exploring sustainable management of the Earth.

For distinction standard, learners will explore a broad selection of the Earth's biomes and their supporting processes, including the main biogeochemistry cycles of carbon, nitrogen and phosphate, with a selection of other biogeochemistry cycles related to their chosen biomes. Learners will clearly articulate their understanding of biogeochemical cycles related to living processes within their chosen biomes, and include a range of images, graphs, tables and appropriate chemistry. Learners will make links between the different biomes and these biogeochemical cycles for living processes, giving detailed accounts of these links using measurements, facts and figures to support their discussion. Learners will analyse the significance of biological cycles and energy through these systems, with any significant biochemistry provided through the use of images or detailed descriptions, making reference to specific biochemistry that differs between biomes.

In discussing the sustainable management of the Earth, learners will provide in-depth examinations of a number of issues that affect global systems, using a number of case studies to illustrate these issues, using secondary research. Learners will demonstrate a detailed understanding of the main international and national organisations related to environmental sustainability, giving their structure, roles, history and obligations. Learners will give specific details of the main UK environmental management organisations and cite at least one case study to inform their examination, using secondary research.

Learners will present a summary of their interpretation of environmental sustainability and the effectiveness of current management processes. Learners will include facts and figures to support their thinking and make connections or reference to topics and principles discussed in this assignment, or in other assignments within this unit, including current issues to demonstrate wider reading and secondary research.

For merit standard, learners will explore a broad selection of the Earth's biomes and their supporting processes. Learners will discuss the main biogeochemistry cycles of carbon, nitrogen and phosphate, with another specific biogeochemistry cycle related to one of their biomes, providing links to living processes and biochemical energy through systems for the biome.

In their discussion of sustainable Earth management, learners will explore a range of issues that affect global systems, including an illustrative detailed case study to show secondary research. Learners will demonstrate their knowledge of the main international and national organisations related to environmental sustainability, including roles, history and obligations.

Learners will present a summary of their interpretation of environmental sustainability and the effectiveness of current management processes. Learners will include facts and figures to support their thinking.

For pass standard, learners will select a minimum of three of the Earth biomes and identify their supporting concepts. Learners will summarise the main biogeochemistry cycles of carbon, nitrogen and phosphate, and make connections of these cycles to all their chosen biomes. They will identify the biogeochemistry's value to the living systems, using their selected biomes to demonstrate understanding.

In their discussion of sustainable Earth management, learners will give short summaries of a range of issues that affect global systems, providing an illustrative case study. Learners will note the main organisations that are related to environmental sustainability, including some global perspectives of their roles.

Learners will present a summary of their interpretation of environmental sustainability and the effectiveness of current management processes.

Links to other units

This unit links to:

- Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science
- Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats
- Unit 19: Coastal Habitat Management
- Unit 22: Freshwater and Wetland Management
- Unit 23: Applied Ecological Management
- Unit 24: Ecological Concepts.

Employer involvement

Centres can involve employers in the delivery of this unit if there are local opportunities to do so. There is no specific guidance related to this unit.

Unit 26: Managing Countryside Visitor Activities

Level: **3**

Unit type: **Internal**

Guided learning hours: **60**

Unit in brief

Learners will develop skills and knowledge in the management of countryside activities for visitors with a range of interests.

Unit introduction

There are many different areas in the UK that can be explored by members of the public, ranging from open countryside to coastal inlets and mountains. A growing interest in these areas has led to an increased use of the countryside for recreation purposes as well as tourism. With the increased awareness of the need for conservation activities, visitors to the countryside can also include people who work as volunteers helping to manage the environment.

In this unit, you will learn about the skills and responsibilities of activity leaders in the countryside, including working with and managing teams, meeting visitor needs and preparing countryside environments for different purposes, including recreation and conservation.

This unit builds on tasks carried out in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation* and in completing the assessment tasks for this unit, it is expected that you will select and apply your knowledge and skills from the following units: *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities*, *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science*, *Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors*, *Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities*, *Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats*, *Unit 7: Woodland Management*, *Unit 8: Identification, Planting and Care of Trees*, and *Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management*. You will also use your experience of real work practices in the sector that you gained in *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors*.

The skills you develop in this unit will help to prepare you for employment in the countryside management sector in roles such as conservation officer, park ranger or reserve officer. Additionally, the unit will help prepare you for progression to higher education courses such as a BSc (Hons) in Countryside and Environmental Management.

Learning aims

In this unit you will:

- A** Examine the skills required to responsibly manage countryside visitor activities
- B** Plan and prepare countryside activities to meet visitor needs
- C** Undertake the management of visitor activities in the countryside.

Summary of unit

Learning aim	Key content areas	Recommended assessment approach
A Examine the skills required to responsibly manage countryside visitor activities	A1 Roles and responsibilities of activity leaders A2 Leading activity teams A3 Managing visitor safety and behaviour	A report/presentation examining the roles and responsibilities of a team leader, conducting countryside visitor activities for given scenarios.
B Plan and prepare countryside activities to meet visitor needs	B1 Activity planning B2 Preparing environments B3 Visitor information and resources	A portfolio of evidence for a countryside activity, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • activity management planning with rationale • evidence of the practical preparation of an environment and information/educational materials for visitors • evidence of the management of a countryside activity and a report evaluating its success. Learners will be expected to select and apply learning from other mandatory units and optional units as appropriate.
C Undertake the management of visitor activities in the countryside	C1 Managing a countryside activity C2 Evaluating a countryside activity	

Content

Learning aim A: Examine the skills required to responsibly manage countryside visitor activities

A1 Roles and responsibilities of activity leaders

Key roles and responsibilities of countryside activity leaders, including the general and specialist skills required.

- Recreational visits, including: sporting, e.g. hunting, fishing, horse riding; adventure, e.g. white water rafting, canoeing, rock climbing; heritage and cultural, e.g. stately homes, national parks, concerts and festivals; nature activities, e.g. birdwatching.
- Conservation and educational visits, including:
 - environmental education, e.g. guided tours, nature tourism
 - survey activities, e.g. butterfly sampling, belt transects, bird call surveys
 - habitat production and maintenance, e.g. clearing or restoring environments, developing wildlife habitats.

A2 Leading activity teams

The management skills and attitudes required to lead work teams and manage the visiting public for countryside activities.

- Team leader qualities and skills, including:
 - specialist knowledge and skills relating to activities, e.g. sporting or cultural; creating and maintaining habitats; environmental management
 - personal skills, e.g. organisational skills, good communicator, physical fitness
 - practical countryside skills, e.g. tree planting, boundary repair, wildlife rehabilitation.
- Team leadership skills and organisation:
 - creating a vision, developing strategies, setting aims and objectives, long- and short-term planning
 - managing change within the organisation or team
 - communication across different levels within organisations, including written, oral and body language
 - assessing team strengths and weaknesses, assigning roles, delegation of tasks, appropriate allocation of workload
 - team dynamics, motivating people, setting individual goals, managing disputes
 - managing staff, including paid staff and volunteers, e.g. The Working Time Regulations 1998, rotas, comfort breaks
 - time management, e.g. start and finish times, timescales, frequency and level of visitors.
- Visitor management:
 - meeting visitor needs and expectations
 - preparation and provision of visitor information
 - personal interaction with visitors, including representing organisations
 - record keeping.

A3 Managing visitor safety and behaviour

Considerations and responsibilities in relation to managing the safety of countryside visitors.

- Health and safety procedures and information:
 - visitor information, including: legal requirement briefing; contact points; advice posters; signage, e.g. danger zones, out of bounds, deep water; emergency procedures, e.g. evacuation procedures, first-aid staff
 - provision of personal protective equipment (PPE) related to activity.

- Risk management:
 - production of initial and dynamic risk assessments for activities
 - access arrangements, resources, e.g. equipment upkeep, footpath maintenance
 - environmental risks, e.g. overhead power lines, low branches, water
 - activity-related risks, e.g. hazardous materials, sporting weapons or equipment, lone working or crowd control.
- Key considerations of current legislation and codes of practice related to the treatment of visitors, and visitor safety and behaviour in the environment, to include:
 - Equality Act 2010
 - safeguarding
 - The Countryside Code
 - Environment Act 1995
 - Water Framework Directive 2000
 - Habitats and Birds Directives
 - Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981.

Learning aim B: Plan and prepare countryside activities to meet visitor needs

In planning and carrying out countryside visitor activities, learners must select and apply learning from across the mandatory content of the qualification, building on the synoptic assessment undertaken in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*.

B1 Activity planning

Key considerations in the planning and scheduling of countryside activities.

- Aims of the activity, objectives and intended outcomes.
- Location for activities, e.g. their suitability, adaptations or permissions required.
- Participant characteristics and needs, including:
 - status and expectations, e.g. volunteers, paying customers
 - age and ability range, e.g. young children, young adults, elderly or disabled
 - knowledge and skills, e.g. novice, general interest, experienced participant
 - health and safety requirements.
- Scheduling and timing, including:
 - number and frequency of visits for activities, e.g. one-off, daily, weekly
 - start and finish times for both visitors and staff
 - factors affecting timing, e.g. equipment or resource delivery, completion of activities, weather constraints.
- Resourcing and costs, including staff, general and specialist equipment and materials, visitor facilities, e.g. food and drink, toilet facilities.
- Preparation activities, including environment, resources, staff training, promotion and publicity.
- Contingency planning, e.g. wet-weather plans, staff illness.

B2 Preparing environments

Preparing and maintaining environments to a standard appropriate for the activity and the safety of the visitors.

- Preparing countryside environments, including activity-related environment adaptation, maintenance or aesthetic improvement, e.g. viewing platform, pathways, fencing, overgrowth clearance.
- Responsibilities to be carried out in relation to visitor safety:
 - safety checks of site, personnel access, safety of structures, e.g. walkways, fences and boundaries
 - location of underground/overground services, e.g. water, electric, sewage and gas, including appropriate signage
 - cordoning off areas, restricted access, use of signage, temporary fencing, permanent fencing and taping out-of-bounds areas.

- Checking equipment specific to each activity, e.g. ropes, safety gear, compasses, and recording safety checks.
- Managing materials used in environment preparation, e.g. wood, soil, sand, including ordering, storing, and maintaining inventories.

B3 Visitor information and resources

The preparation of visitor information and practical resources for countryside activities.

- Signage: directional, health and safety, maps and information displays.
- Physical resources, e.g. labelled plant samples or wildlife specimens.
- Information resources for educational or general interest purposes: visual, e.g. posters, drawings, worksheets; auditory, e.g. audio guides, bird call recordings; written, e.g. leaflets, identification guides, instructional information packs.
- Tools, sporting equipment, general equipment, e.g. rucksack, torch, compass.
- Recording resources, e.g. camera, bat recorder, digital recorder, writing equipment.

Learning aim C: Undertake the management of visitor activities in the countryside

C1 Managing a countryside activity

- Methods and processes used to manage visitors to the countryside:
 - organisation of visitor reception, orientation and induction, safety briefings, question-and-answer sessions
 - collection and issuing of equipment
 - activity-related tasks, e.g. guided tours/talks, leading groups in practical activities, gathering and recording information from surveys, assisting visitors with particular needs, e.g. age- or ability-related needs
 - managing activity in line with planning
 - problem solving and response to contingencies
 - staff and volunteer management
 - collection, checking, storage and maintenance of equipment at the end of visit or activity
 - collecting and managing visitor feedback.

C2 Evaluating a countryside activity

- Established measures of success for countryside visits, including: achieving aims, accurate planning of time and resources, managing unforeseen events, visitor satisfaction.
- Obtaining visitor feedback, e.g. questionnaires – written/oral/online, suggestions box, scoring system on suggested improvements.
- Reviewing countryside visits:
 - use of success measures
 - suggested future improvements.

Assessment criteria

Pass	Merit	Distinction
Learning aim A: Examine the skills required to responsibly manage countryside visitor activities		A.D1 Evaluate strategies for good leadership and management for different roles and responsibilities during countryside activities and visits.
A.P1 Explain the roles and responsibilities of leaders of countryside activities and visits. A.P2 Explain approaches to the management and leadership of teams for different activities in the countryside.	A.M1 Discuss the importance of good team management for the different roles and responsibilities of leaders of countryside activities and visits.	
Learning aim B: Plan and prepare countryside activities to meet visitor needs		B.D2 Prepare environmental, physical and information resources for a complex countryside visitor activity, with a comprehensive rationale for own planning decisions.
B.P3 Explain own planning decisions for a simple countryside visitor activity. B.P4 Prepare environmental, physical and information resources for a simple countryside visitor activity.	B.M2 Discuss own planning decisions for a complex countryside visitor activity. B.M3 Prepare environmental, physical and information resources for a complex countryside visitor activity.	
Learning aim C: Undertake the management of visitor activities in the countryside		C.D3 Comprehensively manage activities for a complex countryside experience, including a detailed review of its success.
C.P5 Carry out activities to manage a simple countryside experience. C.P6 Explain the factors that contribute to the success of the countryside activity.	C.M4 Carry out activities to manage a complex countryside experience. C.M5 Assess the importance of factors that contribute to the success of the countryside activity.	

Essential information for assignments

The recommended structure of assessment is shown in the unit summary along with suitable forms of evidence. *Section 6* gives information on setting assignments and there is further information on our website.

There is a maximum number of two summative assignments for this unit. The relationship of the learning aims and criteria is:

Learning aim: A (A.P1, A.P2, A.M1, A.D1)

Learning aims: B and C (B.P3, B.P4, C.P5, C.P6, B.M2, B.M3, C.M4, C.M5, B.D2, C.D3)

Further information for teachers and assessors

Resource requirements

For this unit, learners must have access to:

- rural parkland, a wooded area or small copse
- a virtual learning environment for storing and sharing information.

Essential information for assessment decisions

Learning aim A

For distinction standard, learners will produce a comprehensive and accurate account of the importance of good leadership skills for a minimum of two different roles for those managing countryside visitor activities. The report will explore and contrast the leadership and management strategies available in the roles, and contain reasoned arguments for the preferences selected in the situations discussed that are clearly and accurately linked to the fundamental requirements of the role. Learners will give a detailed account of all aspects of the roles, as well as accurate details of the skills required to complete the associated responsibilities, such as the need to adhere to current legislation and codes of practice, or the importance of understanding the sensitive issues that exist when working with people from different age ranges.

Learners will show breadth and depth of understanding of the impact of good leadership on the activity. They will demonstrate breadth and depth of understanding in all areas, using specific terminology accurately throughout.

For merit standard, learners will make clear and appropriate judgements in their assessment of good leadership skills for a minimum of two different roles for those managing countryside visitor activities. Learners will make mainly relevant connections between each of the roles and the team management skills needed, which will be mostly accurate. Learners will give a detailed account of the roles discussed, exploring a range of skills and aptitudes required to complete connected activities, such as visitor safety, or time management for teams.

Learners will evidence their understanding of how conduct can have both a positive and a negative influence on the activity. They will demonstrate a relevant understanding in all areas, generally using specific terminology accurately throughout.

For pass standard, learners will give a limited but realistic account of leadership approaches for a minimum of two different roles for those who are carrying out countryside visitor activities. Some connections between the fundamental requirements for each of the roles and the leadership skills needed will be evidenced, but may contain some irrelevancies. Learners will give some detail of the skills and aptitudes required when leading an activity, including a basic level of understanding of the responsibilities, for example the need to adhere to current legislation and codes of practice.

They will show a somewhat underdeveloped understanding of how their conduct can have both a positive and a negative influence on the activity. Learners will demonstrate some understanding in all areas, using a limited range of terminology accurately throughout.

Learning aims B and C

In completing the assessment for learning aims B and C, learners must individually plan and carry out the management of countryside visitor activities. They are required to independently select, apply and demonstrate appropriate knowledge and skills from across the mandatory content of the qualification, and should build on, and make connections between, their research and planning carried out in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*. Learning aims B and C are evidenced through building a portfolio of evidence, to allow for the best possible opportunities for assessment.

Learning aim B should be delivered and assessed before learning aim C. Teachers should ensure that the management activities carried out by learners give sufficient scope for them to complete the assessment fully.

For distinction standard, learners will plan a complex countryside activity thoroughly, giving full, detailed and accurate consideration to all the relevant stages in the planning process and demonstrating initiative through detailed, logically reasoned contingency planning. Learners' plans will include a comprehensive rationale for their planning decisions. This could include a thoroughly reasoned consideration of the usefulness of the methods and approaches selected in relation to the limits and appropriateness of the environment and facilities, the impact of the activity on the environment, the feasibility of components within the activity, and the legal and health and safety considerations in relation to participants, the overseeing organisation, and the environment.

Learners will consistently and accurately apply their knowledge and skills from the assessment completed in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*, by thoroughly accounting for the scope and requirements of the activity, and planning its management meticulously to meet the needs of the participants.

Individually, and as a team leader where appropriate, learners will appropriately and skilfully prepare the environment and facilities for the planned activity, with clear anticipation of visitor needs and expectations, including health and safety and involvement in, and enjoyment of, the activity. Learners will organise and produce a range of accurate and engaging visitor information that may involve a wide range of media, such as recorded video information, or interactive resources, and that clearly takes account of a range of visitor needs, such as ranges in age or ability.

In managing the activity, learners will take on a wide range of responsibilities, and demonstrate strong and efficient organisational and management skills. Learners will manage, lead, and carry out the tasks with confidence, demonstrating initiative and taking responsibility for problems and contingencies. Learners will demonstrate meticulous consideration of health and safety requirements, assessing risks and minimising potential injuries to themselves and others, selecting and using safety equipment appropriately and skilfully.

Learners will make concerted efforts to collect a wide range of information and feedback relating to visitor satisfaction with the activity, which will inform their evaluation of its success. Their evaluation will consistently demonstrate detailed, accurate links to planned success measures, and they will give logical, reasoned conclusions as to methods of enhancing future efforts, such as variations in strategic planning and organisation.

For merit standard, learners will plan a complex countryside activity. A complex activity may involve multiple stages, or take place over an extended period of time, or involve large visitor numbers, such as an adventure sport activity, volunteers participating in a multi-staged environmental project, or an educational project with visitors in a variety of locations. Learners will give detailed consideration to all the relevant stages in the planning process, and they will demonstrate initiative through the anticipation of potential issues that could arise during the activity, suggesting possible solutions. Learners' plans will include a detailed rationale for their planning decisions, demonstrating an accurate and reasoned consideration of the usefulness of the methods and approaches selected in relation to the limits and appropriateness of the environment and facilities, and legal and health and safety considerations.

Learners will apply their knowledge and skills from the assessment completed in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*, by considering the scope and requirements of the activity, and planning its management with referenced consideration of the needs of the participants.

Individually, and as a team leader where appropriate, learners will appropriately and accurately prepare the environment and facilities for the planned activity, with clear consideration of visitor needs and expectations, including health and safety and involvement in, and enjoyment of, the activity. Learners will produce a range of accurate and engaging visitor information that may involve a wide range of media, such as recorded video information or interactive resources.

In managing the activity, learners will demonstrate strong organisational and team-leading skills, such as problem solving and utilising contingency planning if appropriate. They will carry out the tasks with confidence, demonstrating initiative within the limits of their responsibilities. Learners will show significant and detailed consideration of health and safety requirements, assessing risks and minimising potential injuries to themselves and others, selecting and using safety equipment appropriately and skilfully.

Learners will collect a range of information relating to visitor satisfaction with the activity, which will significantly contribute to their evaluation of its success, and they will demonstrate clear and detailed links to planned success measures, giving logical and reasoned approaches that could be taken to enhance future efforts, such as the quality of resources and variations in planning and organisation.

For pass standard, learners will plan a simple countryside activity. A simple activity will involve few stages and may be of a short duration, such as a guided information walk, volunteers participating in environmental clearing and maintenance or a short sporting activity requiring limited organisation. Learners will give some consideration to all the relevant stages in the planning process, from the initial setting of the activity aims to the preparation of the environment, the activity staff required, the preparation and collection of relevant resources, activity timings, and having systems in place to gather participant feedback. Learners' plans will include a rationale for their planning decisions, demonstrating a limited, but appropriate consideration of the usefulness of the methods and approaches selected, and the legal and health and safety considerations.

Learners will apply their knowledge and skills from the assessment completed in *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*, demonstrating an understanding of the link between the type of activity and visitor needs.

Individually, and as a team leader where appropriate, learners will prepare the environment and facilities in a manner appropriate to the planned activity and visitor needs and expectations, including health and safety and involvement in the activity. Learners will produce visitor information that may be simple, such as leaflets, signs or small exhibitions, but that will be accurate and appropriate.

In managing the activity, learners will demonstrate some evidence of organisational and team-leading skills. They will generally carry out the tasks with confidence and occasionally demonstrate initiative within the limits of their responsibility. Learners will show appropriate consideration of health and safety requirements, assessing risks to self and others, selecting and using equipment appropriately.

Learners will collect some information relating to visitor satisfaction with the activity, which they will use to contribute to their evaluation of its success, making appropriate links to planned success measures and giving reasoned approaches to enhancing future efforts by simple methods, such as improved facilities or changes in timings.

Links to other units

This unit should be completed towards the end of the programme. In order to complete the synoptic assessment task across this unit and *Unit 14: Countryside Recreation*, learners should select and apply the relevant knowledge and skills from other areas of the mandatory content including from:

- *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities*, the safe management of people in the countryside
- *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science*, environmental knowledge to inform management needs
- *Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors*, issues facing countryside organisations
- *Unit 5: Countryside Estate Skills Activities*, environment management such as the building and maintenance of countryside structures
- *Unit 6: Managing Environmental Habitats*, conservation skills
- *Unit 7: Woodland Management*, managing woodland environments for biodiversity
- *Unit 8: Identification, Planting and Care of Trees*, planting and care activities
- *Unit 11: Wildlife Ecology and Conservation Management*, wildlife management.

Additionally, learners will have completed *Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors* and will be able to apply their experience of and insight into real working practices in the sector.

Employer involvement

This unit would benefit from employer involvement in the form of:

- masterclasses and technical workshops with staff from local land-based organisations
- contribution of ideas to unit assignment/project materials
- observation during work experience
- support from local countryside organisation staff as mentors.

4 Planning your programme

How do I choose the right BTEC National qualification for my learners?

BTEC Nationals come in a range of sizes, each with a specific purpose. You will need to assess learners very carefully to ensure that they start on the right size of qualification to fit into their 16–19 study programme, and that they take the right pathways or optional units that allow them to progress to the next stage.

Some learners may want to take a number of complementary qualifications or keep their progression options open. These learners may be suited to taking a BTEC National Certificate or Extended Certificate. Learners who then decide to continue with a fuller vocational programme can transfer to a BTEC National Diploma or Extended Diploma, for example for their second year.

Some learners are sure of the sector they want to work in and are aiming for progression into that sector via higher education. These learners should be directed to the two-year BTEC National Extended Diploma as the most suitable qualification.

As a centre, you may want to teach learners who are taking different qualifications together. You may also wish to transfer learners between programmes to meet changes in their progression needs. You should check the qualification structures and unit combinations carefully as there is no exact match among the different sizes. You may find that learners need to complete more than the minimum number of units when transferring.

When learners are recruited, you need to give them accurate information on the title and focus of the qualification for which they are studying.

Is there a learner entry requirement?

As a centre it is your responsibility to ensure that learners who are recruited have a reasonable expectation of success on the programme. There are no formal entry requirements but we expect learners to have qualifications at or equivalent to Level 2.

Learners are most likely to succeed if they have:

- five GCSEs at good grades and/or
- BTEC qualification(s) at Level 2
- achievement in English and mathematics through GCSE or Functional Skills.

Learners may demonstrate ability to succeed in various ways. For example, learners may have relevant work experience or specific aptitude shown through diagnostic tests or non-education experience.

What is involved in becoming an approved centre?

All centres must be approved before they can offer these qualifications – so that they are ready to assess learners and so that we can provide the support that it is needed. Further information is given in *Section 8*.

What level of sector knowledge is needed to teach these qualifications?

We do not set any requirements for teachers but expect that centres will assess the overall skills and knowledge of the teaching team to ensure that they are relevant and up to date. This will give learners a rich programme to prepare them for employment in the sector. As part of the requirements of the programme are to involve employers in delivery this should support centres in ensuring that they are following up to date practices when delivering the programme.

What resources are required to deliver these qualifications?

As part of your centre approval you will need to show that the necessary material resources and work spaces are available to deliver BTEC Nationals. For some units, specific resources are required. This is indicated in the units.

How can myBTEC help with planning for these qualifications?

myBTEC is an online toolkit that supports the delivery, assessment and quality assurance of BTECs in centres. It supports teachers with activities, such as choosing a valid combination of units, creating assignment briefs and creating assessment plans. For further information see *Section 10*.

Which modes of delivery can be used for these qualifications?

You are free to deliver BTEC Nationals using any form of delivery that meets the needs of your learners. We recommend making use of a wide variety of modes, including direct instruction in classrooms or work environments, investigative and practical work, group and peer work, private study and e-learning.

What are the requirements for meaningful employer involvement?

Requirements

This BTEC National Extended Diploma in Countryside Management has been designed as a Tech Level qualification. As an approved centre you are required to ensure that during their study, every learner has access to meaningful activity involving employers. Involvement should be with employers from the countryside management sector and should form a significant part of the delivery or assessment of the qualification. Each centre's approach to employer involvement will be monitored in two ways. It will be monitored at centre level in the first term each year as part of the annual quality management review process that addresses centre strategy for delivery, assessment and quality assurance, when we will ask you to show evidence of how employer involvement is provided for all learners. You will need to show evidence in order to gain reporting clearance for certification. It will be monitored also at programme level as part of the standards verification process to confirm that plans for employer involvement meet the requirements of the specification. These approaches are designed to ensure additional activities can be scheduled where necessary so learners are not disadvantaged (see *Section 8 Quality assurance*).

We know that the vast majority of programmes already have established links with employers. In order to give you maximum flexibility in creating and strengthening employer involvement, we have not specified a particular level of input from employers. However, meaningful employer involvement, as defined below, should contribute significantly to at least **three** units of which one must be a mandatory unit. For this qualification, learners are expected to undertake 300 hours of work experience.

This is the mandatory unit that specifies where assessment will be linked to employers:

- Unit 4: Work Experience in the Land-based Sectors.

There are suggestions in many of the units about how employers could become involved in delivery and/or assessment. These suggestions are not exhaustive and there will be other possibilities at local level.

Employer involvement in these units is subject to verification as part of the standards verification process (see *Section 8*).

Definition

Activities that are eligible to be counted as meaningful engagement are:

- structured work experience or work placements that develop skills and knowledge relevant to the qualification
- projects or assessments set with input from industry practitioners
- masterclasses or guest lectures from industry practitioners
- 'expert witness' reports from practitioners that contribute to the assessment of a learner's work.

There may be other ways in which learners can benefit from contact with employers or prepare for employment, such as listening to careers talks or working in simulated environments. While they provide benefits to learners they do not count as meaningful engagement.

Support

It is important that you give learners opportunities that are high quality and directly relevant to their study. We will support you in this through guidance materials and by giving you examples of best practice.

What support is available?

We provide a wealth of support materials, including curriculum plans, delivery guides, authorised assignment briefs, additional papers for external assessments and examples of marked learner work.

You will be allocated a Standards Verifier early on in the planning stage to support you with planning your assessments. There will be extensive training programmes as well as support from our Subject Advisor team.

For further details see *Section 10*.

How will my learners become more employable through these qualifications?

BTEC Nationals are mapped to relevant occupational standards (see *Appendix 1*).

In the mandatory content and the selected optional units that focus on technical preparation learners will be acquiring the key knowledge and skills that employers need. Also, employability skills such as team working and entrepreneurialism, and completing realistic tasks, have been built into the design of the learning aims and content. This gives you the opportunity to use relevant contexts, scenarios and materials to enable learners to develop a portfolio of evidence that demonstrates the breadth of their skills and knowledge in a way that equips them for employment.

5 Assessment structure and external assessment

Introduction

BTEC Nationals are assessed using a combination of *internal assessments*, which are set and marked by teachers, and *external assessments* which are set and marked by Pearson:

- mandatory units have a combination of internal and external assessments
- all optional units are internally assessed.

We have taken great care to ensure that the assessment method chosen is appropriate to the content of the unit and in line with requirements from employers and higher education.

In developing an overall plan for delivery and assessment for the programme, you will need to consider the order in which you deliver units, whether delivery is over short or long periods and when assessment can take place. Some units are defined as synoptic units (see *Section 2*). Normally, a synoptic assessment is one that a learner would take later in a programme and in which they will be expected to apply learning from a range of units. Synoptic units may be internally or externally assessed. Where a unit is externally assessed you should refer to the sample assessment materials (SAMs) to identify where there is an expectation that learners draw on their wider learning. For internally-assessed units, you must plan the assignments so that learners can demonstrate learning from across their programme. A unit may be synoptic in one qualification and not another because of the relationship it has to the rest of the qualification.

We have addressed the need to ensure that the time allocated to final assessment of internal and external units is reasonable so that there is sufficient time for teaching and learning, formative assessment and development of transferable skills.

In administering internal and external assessment, the centre needs to be aware of the specific procedures and policies that apply, for example to registration, entries and results. An overview with signposting to relevant documents is given in *Section 7*.

Internal assessment

Our approach to internal assessment for these qualifications will be broadly familiar to experienced centres. It offers flexibility in how and when you assess learners, provided that you meet assessment and quality assurance requirements. You will need to take account of the requirements of the unit format, which we explain in *Section 3*, and the requirements for delivering assessment given in *Section 6*.

External assessment

A summary of the external assessment for this qualification is given in *Section 2*. You should check this information carefully, together with the unit specification and the sample assessment materials, so that you can timetable learning and assessment periods appropriately.

Learners must be prepared for external assessment by the time they undertake it. In preparing learners for assessment you will want to take account of required learning time, the relationship with other external assessments and opportunities for retaking. You should ensure that learners are not entered for unreasonable amounts of external assessment in one session. Learners may resit an external assessment to obtain a higher grade of near pass or above. If a learner has more than one attempt, then the best result will be used for qualification grading, up to the permitted maximum. It is unlikely that learners will need to or benefit from taking all assessment twice so you are advised to plan appropriately. Some assessments are synoptic and learners are likely to perform best if these assessments are taken towards the end of the programme.

Key features of external assessment in countryside management

In countryside management, after consultation with stakeholders, we have developed the following.

- *Unit 1: Professional Working Responsibilities* – learners complete written tasks examining their knowledge and skills in the areas of professional working practice, personal welfare, and responsibilities for themselves, others and the environment. The unit provides crucial knowledge and skills for wide-ranging roles found in the countryside management sector.
- *Unit 2: Plant and Soil Science* – learners complete a written examination demonstrating their knowledge of plant structures, systemic processes, and nutrition and soil composition and management. The unit provides fundamental knowledge of the processes for healthy plant growth, which is important for wide-ranging roles in countryside management, relating to the ecology and maintenance of countryside environments.
- *Unit 3: Contemporary Issues in the Land-based Sectors* – learners complete written tasks, consolidating their research into contemporary issues in the land-based sectors. The unit provides essential skills to interrogate sources of information on issues facing those working in the sectors and to draw critical conclusions on the validity and importance of the information.

Units

The externally-assessed units have a specific format which we explain in *Section 3*. The content of units will be sampled across external assessments over time, through appropriate papers and tasks. The ways in which learners are assessed are shown through the assessment outcomes and grading descriptors. External assessments are marked and awarded using the grade descriptors. The grades available are Distinction (D), Merit (M), Pass (P) and Near Pass (N). The Near Pass (N) grade gives learners credit below a Pass, where they have demonstrated evidence of positive performance which is worth more than an unclassified result but not yet at the Pass standard.

Sample assessment materials

Each externally-assessed unit has a set of sample assessment materials (SAMs) that accompanies this specification. The SAMs are there to give you an example of what the external assessment will look like in terms of the feel and level of demand of the assessment. In the case of units containing synoptic assessment, the SAMs will also show where learners are expected to select and apply from across the programme.

The SAMs show the range of possible question types that may appear in the actual assessments. They give you a good indication of how the assessments will be structured. While SAMs can be used for practice with learners as with any assessment, the content covered and specific details of the questions asked will change in each assessment.

A copy of each of these assessments can be downloaded from our website. To allow your learners further opportunities for practice, an additional sample of each of the Pearson-set units will be available before the first sitting of the assessment.

6 Internal assessment

This section gives an overview of the key features of internal assessment and how you, as an approved centre, can offer it effectively. The full requirements and operational information are given in the *Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook*. All members of the assessment team need to refer to this document.

For BTEC Nationals it is important that you can meet the expectations of stakeholders and the needs of learners by providing a programme that is practical and applied. Centres can tailor programmes to meet local needs and use links with local employers and the wider vocational sector.

When internal assessment is operated effectively it is challenging, engaging, practical and up to date. It must also be fair to all learners and meet national standards.

Principles of internal assessment

Assessment through assignments

For internally-assessed units, the format of assessment is an assignment taken after the content of the unit, or part of the unit if several assignments are used, has been delivered. An assignment may take a variety of forms, including practical and written types. An assignment is a distinct activity completed independently by learners that is separate from teaching, practice, exploration and other activities that learners complete with direction from, and formative assessment by, teachers.

An assignment is issued to learners as an assignment brief with a defined start date, a completion date and clear requirements for the evidence that they need to provide. There may be specific observed practical components during the assignment period. Assignments can be divided into tasks and may require several forms of evidence. A valid assignment will enable a clear and formal assessment outcome based on the assessment criteria.

Assessment decisions through applying unit-based criteria

Assessment decisions for BTEC Nationals are based on the specific criteria given in each unit and set at each grade level. To ensure that standards are consistent in the qualification and across the suite as a whole, the criteria for each unit have been defined according to a framework. The way in which individual units are written provides a balance of assessment of understanding, practical skills and vocational attributes appropriate to the purpose of qualifications.

The assessment criteria for a unit are hierarchical and holistic. For example, if an M criterion requires the learner to show 'analysis' and the related P criterion requires the learner to 'explain', then to satisfy the M criterion a learner will need to cover both 'explain' and 'analyse'. The unit assessment grid shows the relationships among the criteria so that assessors can apply all the criteria to the learner's evidence at the same time. In *Appendix 2* we have set out a definition of terms that assessors need to understand.

Assessors must show how they have reached their decisions using the criteria in the assessment records. When a learner has completed all the assessment for a unit then the assessment team will give a grade for the unit. This is given simply according to the highest level for which the learner is judged to have met all the criteria. Therefore:

- to achieve a Distinction, a learner must have satisfied all the Distinction criteria (and therefore the Pass and Merit criteria); these define outstanding performance across the unit as a whole
- to achieve a Merit, a learner must have satisfied all the Merit criteria (and therefore the Pass criteria) through high performance in each learning aim
- to achieve a Pass, a learner must have satisfied all the Pass criteria for the learning aims, showing coverage of the unit content and therefore attainment at Level 3 of the national framework.

The award of a Pass is a defined level of performance and cannot be given solely on the basis of a learner completing assignments. Learners who do not satisfy the Pass criteria should be reported as Unclassified.

The assessment team

It is important that there is an effective team for internal assessment. There are three key roles involved in implementing assessment processes in your centre, each with different interrelated responsibilities, the roles are listed below. Full information is given in the *Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook*.

- The Lead Internal Verifier (the Lead IV) has overall responsibility for the programme, its assessment and internal verification to meet our requirements, record keeping and liaison with the Standards Verifier. The Lead IV registers with Pearson annually. The Lead IV acts as an assessor, supports the rest of the assessment team, makes sure that they have the information they need about our assessment requirements and organises training, making use of our guidance and support materials.
- Internal Verifiers (IVs) oversee all assessment activity in consultation with the Lead IV. They check that assignments and assessment decisions are valid and that they meet our requirements. IVs will be standardised by working with the Lead IV. Normally, IVs are also assessors but they do not verify their own assessments.
- Assessors set or use assignments to assess learners to national standards. Before taking any assessment decisions, assessors participate in standardisation activities led by the Lead IV. They work with the Lead IV and IVs to ensure that the assessment is planned and carried out in line with our requirements.

Effective organisation

Internal assessment needs to be well organised so that the progress of learners can be tracked and so that we can monitor that assessment is being carried out in line with national standards. We support you through, for example, providing training materials and sample documentation. Our online myBTEC service can help support you in planning and record keeping. Further information on using myBTEC can be found in *Section 10* and on our website.

It is particularly important that you manage the overall assignment programme and deadlines to make sure that learners are able to complete assignments on time.

Learner preparation

To ensure that you provide effective assessment for your learners, you need to make sure that they understand their responsibilities for assessment and the centre's arrangements.

From induction onwards, you will want to ensure that learners are motivated to work consistently and independently to achieve the requirements of the qualifications. Learners need to understand how assignments are used, the importance of meeting assignment deadlines and that all the work submitted for assessment must be their own.

You will need to give learners a guide that explains how assignments are used for assessment, how assignments relate to the teaching programme and how learners should use and reference source materials, including what would constitute plagiarism. The guide should also set out your approach to operating assessment, such as how learners must submit work and request extensions.

Setting effective assignments

Setting the number and structure of assignments

In setting your assignments, you need to work with the structure of assignments shown in the *Essential information for assignments* section of a unit. This shows the structure of the learning aims and criteria that you must follow and the recommended number of assignments that you should use. For some units we provide authorised assignment briefs. For all the units we give you suggestions on how to create suitable assignments. You can find these materials along with this specification on our website. In designing your own assignment briefs you should bear in mind the following points.

- The number of assignments for a unit must not exceed the number shown in *Essential information for assignments*. However, you may choose to combine assignments, for example to create a single assignment for the whole unit.
- You may also choose to combine all or parts of different units into single assignments, provided that all units and all their associated learning aims are fully addressed in the programme overall. If you choose to take this approach, you need to make sure that learners are fully prepared so that they can provide all the required evidence for assessment and that you are able to track achievement in the records.
- A learning aim must always be assessed as a whole and must not be split into two or more tasks.
- The assignment must be targeted to the learning aims but the learning aims and their associated criteria are not tasks in themselves. Criteria are expressed in terms of the outcome shown in the evidence.
- For units containing synoptic assessment, the planned assignments must allow learners to select and apply their learning using appropriate self-management of tasks.
- You do not have to follow the order of the learning aims of a unit in setting assignments but later learning aims often require learners to apply the content of earlier learning aims and they may require learners to draw their learning together.
- Assignments must be structured to allow learners to demonstrate the full range of achievement at all grade levels. Learners need to be treated fairly by being given the opportunity to achieve a higher grade if they have the ability.
- As assignments provide a final assessment, they will draw on the specified range of teaching content for the learning aims. The specified content is compulsory. The evidence for assessment need not cover every aspect of the teaching content as learners will normally be given particular examples, case studies or contexts in their assignments. For example, if a learner is carrying out one practical performance, or an investigation of one organisation, then they will address all the relevant range of content that applies in that instance.

Providing an assignment brief

A good assignment brief is one that, through providing challenging and realistic tasks, motivates learners to provide appropriate evidence of what they have.

An assignment brief should have:

- a vocational scenario, this could be a simple situation or a full, detailed set of vocational requirements that motivates the learner to apply their learning through the assignment
- clear instructions to the learner about what they are required to do, normally set out through a series of tasks
- an audience or purpose for which the evidence is being provided
- an explanation of how the assignment relates to the unit(s) being assessed.

Forms of evidence

BTEC Nationals have always allowed for a variety of forms of evidence to be used, provided that they are suited to the type of learning aim being assessed. For many units, the practical demonstration of skills is necessary and for others, learners will need to carry out their own research and analysis. The units give you information on what would be suitable forms of evidence to give learners the opportunity to apply a range of employability or transferable skills. Centres may choose to use different suitable forms for evidence to those proposed. Overall, learners should be assessed using varied forms of evidence.

Full definitions of types of assessment are given in *Appendix 2*. These are some of the main types of assessment:

- written reports
- projects
- time-constrained practical assessments with observation records and supporting evidence
- recordings of performance
- sketchbooks, working logbooks, reflective journals
- presentations with assessor questioning.

The form(s) of evidence selected must:

- allow the learner to provide all the evidence required for the learning aim(s) and the associated assessment criteria at all grade levels
- allow the learner to produce evidence that is their own independent work
- allow a verifier to independently reassess the learner to check the assessor's decisions.

For example, when you are using performance evidence, you need to think about how supporting evidence can be captured through recordings, photographs or task sheets.

Centres need to take particular care that learners are enabled to produce independent work. For example, if learners are asked to use real examples, then best practice would be to encourage them to use their own or to give the group a number of examples that can be used in varied combinations.

Making valid assessment decisions

Authenticity of learner work

Once an assessment has begun, learners must not be given feedback on progress towards fulfilling the targeted criteria.

An assessor must assess only learner work that is authentic, i.e. learners' own independent work. Learners must authenticate the evidence that they provide for assessment through signing a declaration stating that it is their own work.

Assessors must ensure that evidence is authentic to a learner through setting valid assignments and supervising them during the assessment period. Assessors must take care not to provide direct input, instructions or specific feedback that may compromise authenticity.

Assessors must complete a declaration that:

- the evidence submitted for this assignment is the learner's own
- the learner has clearly referenced any sources used in the work
- they understand that false declaration is a form of malpractice.

Centres can use Pearson templates or their own templates to document authentication.

During assessment, an assessor may suspect that some or all of the evidence from a learner is not authentic. The assessor must then take appropriate action using the centre's policies for malpractice. Further information is given in *Section 7*.

Making assessment decisions using criteria

Assessors make judgements using the criteria. The evidence from a learner can be judged using all the relevant criteria at the same time. The assessor needs to make a judgement against each criterion that evidence is present and sufficiently comprehensive. For example, the inclusion of a concluding section may be insufficient to satisfy a criterion requiring 'evaluation'.

Assessors should use the following information and support in reaching assessment decisions:

- the *Essential information for assessment decisions* section in each unit gives examples and definitions related to terms used in the criteria
- the explanation of key terms in *Appendix 2*
- examples of assessed work provided by Pearson
- your Lead IV and assessment team's collective experience, supported by the standardisation materials we provide.

Pass and Merit criteria relate to individual learning aims. The Distinction criteria as a whole relate to outstanding performance across the unit. Therefore, criteria may relate to more than one learning aim (for example A.D1) or to several learning aims (for example DE.D3). Distinction criteria make sure that learners have shown that they can perform consistently at an outstanding level across the unit and/or that they are able to draw learning together across learning aims.

Dealing with late completion of assignments

Learners must have a clear understanding of the centre policy on completing assignments by the deadlines that you give them. Learners may be given authorised extensions for legitimate reasons, such as illness at the time of submission, in line with your centre policies.

For assessment to be fair, it is important that learners are all assessed in the same way and that some learners are not advantaged by having additional time or the opportunity to learn from others. Therefore, learners who do not complete assignments by your planned deadline or the authorised extension deadline may not have the opportunity to subsequently resubmit.

If you accept a late completion by a learner, then the assignment should be assessed normally when it is submitted using the relevant assessment criteria.

Issuing assessment decisions and feedback

Once the assessment team has completed the assessment process for an assignment, the outcome is a formal assessment decision. This is recorded formally and reported to learners.

The information given to the learner:

- must show the formal decision and how it has been reached, indicating how or where criteria have been met
- may show why attainment against criteria has not been demonstrated
- must not provide feedback on how to improve evidence
- must be validated by an IV before it is given to the learner.

Resubmission of improved evidence

An assignment provides the final assessment for the relevant learning aims and is normally a final assessment decision, except where the Lead IV approves one opportunity to resubmit improved evidence based on the completed assignment brief.

The Lead IV has the responsibility to make sure that resubmission is operated fairly. This means:

- checking that a learner can be reasonably expected to perform better through a second submission, for example that the learner has not performed as expected
- making sure that giving a further opportunity can be done in such a way that it does not give an unfair advantage over other learners, for example through the opportunity to take account of feedback given to other learners
- checking that the assessor considers that the learner will be able to provide improved evidence without further guidance and that the original evidence submitted remains valid.

Once an assessment decision has been given to the learner, the resubmission opportunity must have a deadline within 15 working days in the same academic year.

A resubmission opportunity must not be provided where learners:

- have not completed the assignment by the deadline without the centre's agreement
- have submitted work that is not authentic.

Retake of internal assessment

A learner who has not achieved the level of performance required to pass the relevant learning aims after resubmission of an assignment may be offered a single retake opportunity using a new assignment. The retake may only be achieved at a Pass.

The Lead Internal Verifier must only authorise a retake of an assignment in exceptional circumstances where they believe it is necessary, appropriate and fair to do so. For further information on offering a retake opportunity, you should refer to the *BTEC Centre Guide to Internal Assessment*. We provide information on writing assignments for retakes on our website (www.btec.co.uk/keydocuments).

Planning and record keeping

For internal processes to be effective, an assessment team needs to be well organised and keep effective records. The centre will also work closely with us so that we can quality assure that national standards are being satisfied. This process gives stakeholders confidence in the assessment approach.

The Lead IV must have an assessment plan, produced as a spreadsheet or using myBTEC. When producing a plan, the assessment team may wish to consider:

- the time required for training and standardisation of the assessment team
- the time available to undertake teaching and carry out assessment, taking account of when learners may complete external assessments and when quality assurance will take place
- the completion dates for different assignments
- who is acting as IV for each assignment and the date by which the assignment needs to be verified
- setting an approach to sampling assessor decisions through internal verification that covers all assignments, assessors and a range of learners
- how to manage the assessment and verification of learners' work so that they can be given formal decisions promptly
- how resubmission opportunities can be scheduled.

The Lead IV will also maintain records of assessment undertaken. The key records are:

- verification of assignment briefs
- learner authentication declarations
- assessor decisions on assignments, with feedback given to learners
- verification of assessment decisions.

Examples of records and further information are given in the *Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook*.

7 Administrative arrangements

Introduction

This section focuses on the administrative requirements for delivering a BTEC qualification. It will be of value to Quality Nominees, Lead IVs, Programme Leaders and Examinations Officers.

Learner registration and entry

Shortly after learners start the programme of learning, you need to make sure that they are registered for the qualification and that appropriate arrangements are made for internal and external assessment. You need to refer to the *Information Manual* for information on making registrations for the qualification and entries for external assessments.

Learners can be formally assessed only for a qualification on which they are registered. If learners' intended qualifications change, for example if a learner decides to choose a different pathway specialism, then the centre must transfer the learner appropriately.

Access to assessment

Both internal and external assessments need to be administered carefully to ensure that all learners are treated fairly, and that results and certification are issued on time to allow learners to progress to chosen progression opportunities.

Our equality policy requires that all learners should have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments, and that our qualifications are awarded in a way that is fair to every learner. We are committed to making sure that:

- learners with a protected characteristic are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to learners who do not share that characteristic
- all learners achieve the recognition they deserve for undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Further information on access arrangements can be found in the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ) document *Access Arrangements, Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration for General and Vocational Qualifications*.

Administrative arrangements for internal assessment

Records

You are required to retain records of assessment for each learner. Records should include assessments taken, decisions reached and any adjustments or appeals. Further information can be found in the *Information Manual*. We may ask to audit your records so they must be retained as specified.

Reasonable adjustments to assessment

A reasonable adjustment is one that is made before a learner takes an assessment to ensure that they have fair access to demonstrate the requirements of the assessments. You are able to make adjustments to internal assessments to take account of the needs of individual learners. In most cases this can be achieved through a defined time extension or by adjusting the format of evidence. We can advise you if you are uncertain as to whether an adjustment is fair and reasonable. You need to plan for time to make adjustments if necessary.

Further details on how to make adjustments for learners with protected characteristics are given on our website in the document *Supplementary guidance for reasonable adjustment and special consideration in vocational internally-assessed units*.

Special consideration

Special consideration is given after an assessment has taken place for learners who have been affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness. You must operate special consideration in line with our policy (see previous paragraph). You can provide special consideration related to the period of time given for evidence to be provided or for the format of the assessment if it is equally valid. You may not substitute alternative forms of evidence to that required in a unit, or omit the application of any assessment criteria to judge attainment. Pearson can consider applications for special consideration in line with the policy.

Appeals against assessment

Your centre must have a policy for dealing with appeals from learners. These appeals may relate to assessment decisions being incorrect or assessment not being conducted fairly. The first step in such a policy could be a consideration of the evidence by a Lead IV or other member of the programme team. The assessment plan should allow time for potential appeals after assessment decisions have been given to learners. If there is an appeal by a learner, you must document the appeal and its resolution. Learners have a final right of appeal to Pearson but only if the procedures that you have put in place have not been followed. Further details are given in our policy *Enquiries and appeals about Pearson Vocational Qualifications*.

Administrative arrangements for external assessment

Entries and resits

For information on the timing of assessment and entries, please refer to the annual examinations timetable on our website.

Access arrangements requests

Access arrangements are agreed with Pearson before an assessment. They allow students with special educational needs, disabilities or temporary injuries to:

- access the assessment
- show what they know and can do without changing the demands of the assessment.

Access arrangements should always be processed at the time of registration. Learners will then know what type of arrangements are available in place for them.

Granting reasonable adjustments

For external assessment, a reasonable adjustment is one that we agree to make for an individual learner. A reasonable adjustment is defined for the individual learner and informed by the list of available access arrangements.

Whether an adjustment will be considered reasonable will depend on a number of factors, to include:

- the needs of the learner with the disability
- the effectiveness of the adjustment
- the cost of the adjustment; and
- the likely impact of the adjustment on the learner with the disability and other learners.

Adjustment may be judged unreasonable and not approved if it involves unreasonable costs, timeframes or affects the integrity of the assessment.

Special consideration requests

Special consideration is an adjustment made to a learner's mark or grade after an external assessment to reflect temporary injury, illness or other indisposition at the time of the assessment. An adjustment is made only if the impact on the learner is such that it is reasonably likely to have had a material effect on that learner being able to demonstrate attainment in the assessment.

Centres are required to notify us promptly of any learners that they believe have been adversely affected and request that we give special consideration. Further information can be found in the special requirements section on our website.

Conducting external assessments

Centres must make arrangement for the secure delivery of external assessments. External assessments for BTEC qualifications include examinations, set tasks and performance.

Each external assessment has a defined degree of control under which it must take place. Some external assessments may have more than one part and each part may have a different degree of control. We define degrees of control as follows.

High control

This is the completion of assessment in formal invigilated examination conditions.

Medium control

This is completion of assessment, usually over a longer period of time, which may include a period of controlled conditions. The controlled conditions may allow learners to access resources, prepared notes or the internet to help them complete the task.

Low control

These are activities completed without direct supervision. They may include research, preparation of materials and practice. The materials produced by learners under low control will not be directly assessed.

Further information on responsibilities for conducting external assessment is given in the document *Instructions for Conducting External Assessments*, available on our website.

Dealing with malpractice in assessment

Malpractice means acts that undermine the integrity and validity of assessment, the certification of qualifications, and/or that may damage the authority of those responsible for delivering the assessment and certification.

Pearson does not tolerate actions (or attempted actions) of malpractice by learners, centre staff or centres in connection with Pearson qualifications. Pearson may impose penalties and/or sanctions on learners, centre staff or centres where incidents (or attempted incidents) of malpractice have been proven.

Malpractice may arise or be suspected in relation to any unit or type of assessment within the qualification. For further details regarding malpractice and advice on preventing malpractice by learners, please see Pearson's *Centre Guidance: Dealing with Malpractice*, available on our website.

The procedures we ask you to adopt vary between units that are internally-assessed and those that are externally assessed.

Internally-assessed units

Centres are required to take steps to prevent malpractice and to investigate instances of suspected malpractice. Learners must be given information that explains what malpractice is for internal assessment and how suspected incidents will be dealt with by the centre. The *Centre Guidance: Dealing with Malpractice* document gives full information on the actions we expect you to take.

Pearson may conduct investigations if we believe that a centre is failing to conduct internal assessment according to our policies. The above document gives further information, examples and details the penalties and sanctions that may be imposed.

In the interests of learners and centre staff, centres need to respond effectively and openly to all requests relating to an investigation into an incident of suspected malpractice.

Externally-assessed units

External assessment means all aspects of units that are designated as external in this specification, including preparation for tasks and performance. For these assessments, centres must follow the JCQ procedures set out in the latest version of *JCQ Suspected Malpractice in Examinations and Assessments Policies and Procedures* (www.jcq.org.uk).

In the interests of learners and centre staff, centres need to respond effectively and openly to all requests relating to an investigation into an incident of suspected malpractice.

Learner malpractice

Heads of Centres are required to report incidents of any suspected learner malpractice that occur during Pearson external assessments. We ask that centres do so by completing a *JCQ Form M1* (available at www.jcq.org.uk/exams-office/malpractice) and emailing it and any accompanying documents (signed statements from the learner, invigilator, copies of evidence, etc.) to the Investigations Team at candidatemalpractice@pearson.com. The responsibility for determining appropriate sanctions or penalties to be imposed on learners lies with Pearson.

Learners must be informed at the earliest opportunity of the specific allegation and the centre's malpractice policy, including the right of appeal. Learners found guilty of malpractice may be disqualified from the qualification for which they have been entered with Pearson.

Teacher/centre malpractice

Heads of Centres are required to inform Pearson's Investigations Team of any incident of suspected malpractice by centre staff, before any investigation is undertaken. Heads of centres are requested to inform the Investigations Team by submitting a *JCQ Form M2(a)* (available at www.jcq.org.uk/exams-office/malpractice) with supporting documentation to pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. Where Pearson receives allegations of malpractice from other sources (for example Pearson staff or anonymous informants), the Investigations Team will conduct the investigation directly or may ask the head of centre to assist.

Incidents of maladministration (accidental errors in the delivery of Pearson qualifications that may affect the assessment of learners) should also be reported to the Investigations Team using the same method.

Heads of Centres/Principals/Chief Executive Officers or their nominees are required to inform learners and centre staff suspected of malpractice of their responsibilities and rights; see Section 6.15 of the *JCQ Suspected Malpractice in Examinations and Assessments Policies and Procedures* document.

Pearson reserves the right in cases of suspected malpractice to withhold the issuing of results and/or certificates while an investigation is in progress. Depending on the outcome of the investigation results and/or certificates may be released or withheld.

You should be aware that Pearson may need to suspend certification when undertaking investigations, audits and quality assurances processes. You will be notified within a reasonable period of time if this occurs.

Sanctions and appeals

Where malpractice is proven we may impose sanctions or penalties.

Where learner malpractice is evidenced, penalties may be imposed such as:

- mark reduction for external assessments
- disqualification from the qualification
- being barred from registration for Pearson qualifications for a period of time.

If we are concerned about your centre's quality procedures we may impose sanctions such as:

- working with you to create an improvement action plan
- requiring staff members to receive further training
- placing temporary blocks on your certificates
- placing temporary blocks on registration of learners
- debarring staff members or the centre from delivering Pearson qualifications
- suspending or withdrawing centre approval status.

The centre will be notified if any of these apply.

Pearson has established procedures for centres that are considering appeals against penalties and sanctions arising from malpractice. Appeals against a decision made by Pearson will normally be accepted only from heads of centres (on behalf of learners and/or members of staff) and from individual members (in respect of a decision taken against them personally). Further information on appeals can be found in our *Enquiries and Appeals* policy, which is on our website. In the initial stage of any aspect of malpractice, please notify the Investigations Team by email via pqsmalpractice@pearson.com who will inform you of the next steps.

Certification and results

Once a learner has completed all the required components for a qualification, even if final results for external assessments have not been issued, then the centre can claim certification for the learner, provided that quality assurance has been successfully completed. For the relevant procedures please refer to our *Information Manual*. You can use the information provided on qualification grading to check overall qualification grades.

Results issue

After the external assessment session, learner results will be issued to centres. The result will be in the form of a grade. You should be prepared to discuss performance with learners, making use of the information we provide and post-results services.

Post-assessment services

Once results for external assessments are issued, you may find that the learner has failed to achieve the qualification or to attain an anticipated grade. It is possible to transfer or reopen registration in some circumstances. The *Information Manual* gives further information.

Changes to qualification requests

Where a learner who has taken a qualification wants to resit an externally-assessed unit to improve their qualification grade, you firstly need to decline their overall qualification grade. You may decline the grade before the certificate is issued. For a learner receiving their results in August, you should decline the grade by the end of September if the learner intends to resit an external assessment.

Additional documents to support centre administration

As an approved centre you must ensure that all staff delivering, assessing and administering the qualifications have access to this documentation. These documents are reviewed annually and are reissued if updates are required.

- *Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook*: this sets out how we will carry out quality assurance of standards and how you need to work with us to achieve successful outcomes.
- *Information Manual*: this gives procedures for registering learners for qualifications, transferring registrations, entering for external assessments and claiming certificates.
- *Lead Examiners' Reports*: these are produced after each series for each external assessment and give feedback on the overall performance of learners in response to tasks or questions set.
- *Instructions for the Conduct of External Assessments*: this explains our requirements for the effective administration of external assessments, such as invigilation and submission of materials.
- *Regulatory policies*: our regulatory policies are integral to our approach and explain how we meet internal and regulatory requirements. We review the regulated policies annually to ensure that they remain fit for purpose. Policies related to this qualification include:
 - adjustments for candidates with disabilities and learning difficulties, access arrangements and reasonable adjustments for general and vocational qualifications
 - age of learners
 - centre guidance for dealing with malpractice
 - recognition of prior learning and process.

This list is not exhaustive and a full list of our regulatory policies can be found on our website.

8 Quality assurance

Centre and qualification approval

As part of the approval process, your centre must make sure that the resource requirements listed below are in place before offering the qualification.

- Centres must have appropriate physical resources (for example equipment, IT, learning materials, teaching rooms) to support the delivery and assessment of the qualification.
- Staff involved in the assessment process must have relevant expertise and/or occupational experience.
- There must be systems in place to ensure continuing professional development for staff delivering the qualification.
- Centres must have in place appropriate health and safety policies relating to the use of equipment by learners.
- Centres must deliver the qualification in accordance with current equality legislation.
- Centres should refer to the teacher guidance section in individual units to check for any specific resources required.

Continuing quality assurance and standards verification

On an annual basis, we produce the *Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook*. It contains detailed guidance on the quality processes required to underpin planning for delivery including appropriate employer involvement, and for robust assessment and internal verification.

The key principles of quality assurance are that:

- a centre delivering BTEC programmes must be an approved centre, and must have approval for the programmes or groups of programmes that it is delivering
- the centre agrees, as part of gaining approval, to abide by specific terms and conditions around the effective delivery and quality assurance of assessment; it must abide by these conditions throughout the period of delivery
- Pearson makes available to approved centres a range of materials and opportunities, through online standardisation, intended to exemplify the processes required for effective assessment, and examples of effective standards. Approved centres must use the materials and services to ensure that all staff delivering BTEC qualifications keep up to date with the guidance on assessment
- an approved centre must follow agreed protocols for standardisation of assessors and verifiers, for the planning, monitoring and recording of assessment processes, and for dealing with special circumstances, appeals and malpractice.

The approach of quality-assured assessment is through a partnership between an approved centre and Pearson. We will make sure that each centre follows best practice and employs appropriate technology to support quality-assurance processes, where practicable. We work to support centres and seek to make sure that our quality-assurance processes do not place undue bureaucratic processes on centres. We monitor and support centres in the effective operation of assessment and quality assurance.

The methods we use to do this for BTEC Level 3 include:

- making sure that all centres complete appropriate declarations at the time of approval
- undertaking approval visits to centres
- making sure that centres have effective teams of assessors and verifiers who are trained to undertake assessment
- assessment sampling and verification, through requested samples of assessments, completed assessed learner work and associated documentation
- an overarching review and assessment of a centre's strategy for delivering and quality assuring its BTEC programmes, for example making sure that synoptic units are placed appropriately in the order of delivery of the programme.

Centres that do not fully address and maintain rigorous approaches to delivering, assessing and quality assurance cannot seek certification for individual programmes or for all BTEC Level 3 programmes. An approved centre must make certification claims only when authorised by us and strictly in accordance with requirements for reporting.

Centres that do not comply with remedial action plans may have their approval to deliver qualifications removed.

9 Understanding the qualification grade

Awarding and reporting for the qualification

This section explains the rules that we apply in awarding a qualification and in providing an overall qualification grade for each learner. It shows how all the qualifications in this sector are graded.

The awarding and certification of these qualifications will comply with regulatory requirements.

Eligibility for an award

In order to be awarded a qualification, a learner must complete all units, achieve a near pass (N) or above in all external units and a pass or above in all mandatory units unless otherwise specified. Refer to the structure in *Section 2*.

To achieve any qualification grade, learners must:

- complete and **have an outcome** (D, M, P, N or U) for all units within a valid combination
- achieve the **required units at pass or above** shown in *Section 2*, and for the Diploma achieve a minimum of 600 GLH and Extended Diploma achieve a minimum 900 GLH at pass or above (or N or above in external units)
- achieve the **minimum number of points** at a grade threshold.

It is the responsibility of a centre to ensure that a correct unit combination is adhered to. Learners who do not achieve the required minimum grade (N or P) in units shown in the structure will not achieve a qualification.

Learners who do not achieve sufficient points for a qualification or who do not achieve all the required units may be eligible to achieve a smaller qualification in the same suite provided they have completed and achieved the correct combination of units and met the appropriate qualification grade points threshold.

Calculation of the qualification grade

The final grade awarded for a qualification represents an aggregation of a learner's performance across the qualification. As the qualification grade is an aggregate of the total performance, there is some element of compensation in that a higher performance in some units may be balanced by a lower outcome in others.

In the event that a learner achieves more than the required number of optional units, the mandatory units along with the optional units with the highest grades will be used to calculate the overall result, subject to the eligibility requirements for that particular qualification title.

BTEC Nationals are Level 3 qualifications and are awarded at the grade ranges shown in the table below.

Qualification	Available grade range
Certificate, Extended Certificate, Foundation Diploma	P to D*
Diploma	PP to D*D*
Extended Diploma	PPP to D*D*D*

The *Calculation of qualification grade* table, shown further on in this section, shows the minimum thresholds for calculating these grades. The table will be kept under review over the lifetime of the qualification. The most up to date table will be issued on our website.

Pearson will monitor the qualification standard and reserves the right to make appropriate adjustments.

Learners who do not meet the minimum requirements for a qualification grade to be awarded will be recorded as Unclassified (U) and will not be certificated. They may receive a Notification of Performance for individual units. The *Information Manual* gives full information.

Points available for internal units

The table below shows the number of **points** available for internal units. For each internal unit, points are allocated depending on the grade awarded.

	Unit size	
	60 GLH	90 GLH
U	0	0
Pass	6	9
Merit	10	15
Distinction	16	24

Points available for external units

Raw marks from the external units will be awarded **points** based on performance in the assessment. The table below shows the **minimum number of points** available for each grade in the external units.

	Unit size	
	90 GLH	120 GLH
U	0	0
Near Pass	6	8
Pass	9	12
Merit	15	20
Distinction	24	32

Pearson will automatically calculate the points for each external unit once the external assessment has been marked and grade boundaries have been set. For more details about how we set grade boundaries in the external assessment please go to our website.

Claiming the qualification grade

Subject to eligibility, Pearson will automatically calculate the qualification grade for your learners when the internal unit grades are submitted and the qualification claim is made. Learners will be awarded qualification grades for achieving the sufficient number of points within the ranges shown in the relevant *Calculation of Qualification Grade* table for the cohort.

Calculation of qualification grade

Applicable for registration from 1 September 2019.

Extended Certificate		Foundation Diploma		Diploma		Extended Diploma	
360 GLH		540 GLH		720 GLH		1080 GLH	
Grade	Points threshold	Grade	Points threshold	Grade	Points threshold	Grade	Points threshold
U	0	U	0	U	0	U	0
P	36	P	54	PP	72	PPP	108
				MP	88	MPP	124
						MMP	140
M	52	M	78	MM	104	MMM	156
				DM	124	DMM	176
						DDM	196
D	74	D	108	DD	144	DDD	216
				D*D	162	D*DD	234
						D*D*D	252
D*	90	D*	138	D*D*	180	D*D*D*	270

The table is subject to review over the lifetime of the qualification. The most up-to-date version will be issued on our website.

Examples of grade calculations based on table applicable to registrations from September 2019

Example 1: Achievement of an Extended Diploma with a PPP grade

	GLH	Type (Int/Ext)	Grade	Unit points
Unit 1	120	Ext	Pass	12
Unit 2	120	Ext	Pass	12
Unit 3	120	Ext	Pass	12
Unit 4	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 5	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 6	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 7	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 8	60	Int	U	0
Unit 9	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 10	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 11	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 12	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 13	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 14	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 26	60	Int	Pass	6
Totals	1080		PPP	114

The learner has achieved N or higher in Units 1, 2 and 3, and P or higher in Units 5, 14 and 26.

The learner has sufficient points for a PPP grade.

Example 2: Achievement of an Extended Diploma with a DDD grade

	GLH	Type (Int/Ext)	Grade	Unit points
Unit 1	120	Ext	Near Pass	8
Unit 2	120	Ext	Merit	20
Unit 3	120	Ext	Distinction	32
Unit 4	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 5	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 6	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 7	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 8	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 9	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 10	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 11	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 12	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 13	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 14	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 26	60	Int	Distinction	16
Totals	1080		DDD	222

The learner has sufficient points for a DDD grade.

Example 3: An Unclassified result for an Extended Diploma

	GLH	Type (Int/Ext)	Grade	Unit points
Unit 1	120	Ext	Merit	20
Unit 2	120	Ext	Merit	20
Unit 3	120	Ext	Pass	12
Unit 4	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 5	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 6	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 7	60	Int	Distinction	16
Unit 8	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 9	60	Int	Unclassified	0
Unit 10	60	Int	Merit	10
Unit 11	60	Int	Unclassified	0
Unit 12	60	Int	Unclassified	0
Unit 13	60	Int	Unclassified	0
Unit 14	60	Int	Pass	6
Unit 26	60	Int	Pass	6
Totals	1080		U	126

The learner has 240 GLH at U.

The learner has sufficient points for an MPP grade and has achieved N or higher in Units 1, 2 and 3, and P or higher in Units 5, 14 and 26, but has not met the minimum requirement for 900 GLH at Pass or above.

10 Resources and support

Our aim is to give you a wealth of resources and support to enable you to deliver BTEC National qualifications with confidence. On our website you will find a list of resources to support teaching and learning, and professional development.

Support for setting up your course and preparing to teach

Specification

This **specification** (for teaching from September 2019) includes details on the administration of qualifications and information on all the units for the qualification.

Delivery Guide

This free guide gives you important advice on how to choose the right course for your learners and how to ensure you are fully prepared to deliver the course. It explains the key features of BTEC Nationals (for example employer involvement and employability skills). It also covers guidance on assessment (internal and external) and quality assurance. The guide tells you where you can find further support and gives detailed unit-by-unit delivery guidance. It includes teaching tips and ideas, assessment preparation and suggestions for further resources.

Schemes of work

Free sample schemes of work are provided for each mandatory unit. These are available in Word™ format for ease of customisation.

Curriculum models

These show how the BTECs in the suite fit into a 16–19 study programme, depending on their size and purpose. The models also show where other parts of the programme, such as work experience, maths and English, tutorial time and wider study, fit alongside the programme.

Study skills activities

A range of case studies and activities is provided; they are designed to help learners develop the study skills they need to successfully complete their BTEC course. The case studies and activities are provided in Word™ format for easy customisation.

myBTEC

myBTEC is a free, online toolkit that lets you plan and manage your BTEC provision from one place. It supports the delivery, assessment and quality assurance of BTECs in centres and supports teachers with the following activities:

- checking that a programme is using a valid combination of units
- creating and verifying assignment briefs (including access to a bank of authorised assignment briefs that can be customised)
- creating assessment plans and recording assessment decisions
- tracking the progress of every learner throughout their programme.

To find out more about myBTEC, visit the myBTEC page on the support services section of our website. We will add the new BTEC National specifications to myBTEC as soon as possible.

Support for teaching and learning

Pearson Learning Services provides a range of engaging resources to support BTEC Nationals, including introductory guides to the Next Generation BTEC National approach to learning.

Teaching and learning resources are also available from a number of other publishers.

Details of Pearson's own resources and of all endorsed resources can be found on our website.

Support for assessment

Sample assessment materials for externally-assessed units

Sample assessments are available for the Pearson-set units. One copy of each of these assessments can be downloaded from the website/available in print. For each suite, an additional sample for one of the Pearson-set units is also available, allowing your learners further opportunities for practice.

Further sample assessments will be made available through our website on an ongoing basis.

Sample assessment materials for internally-assessed units

We do not prescribe the assessments for the internally-assessed units. Rather, we allow you to set your own, according to your learners' preferences and to link with your local employment profile.

We do provide a service in the form of Authorised Assignment Briefs, which are approved by Pearson Standards Verifiers. They are available via our website or free on myBTEC.

Sample marked learner work

To support you in understanding the expectation of the standard at each grade, examples of marked learner work at PM/MD grades are linked to the Authorised Assignment Briefs.

Training and support from Pearson

People to talk to

There are many people who are available to support you and provide advice and guidance on delivery of your BTEC Nationals. These include:

- Subject Advisors – available for all sectors. They understand all Pearson qualifications in their sector and so can answer sector-specific queries on planning, teaching, learning and assessment
- Standards Verifiers – they can support you with preparing your assignments, ensuring that your assessment plan is set up correctly, and support you in preparing learner work and providing quality assurance through sampling
- Curriculum Development Managers (CDMs) – they are regionally based and have a full overview of the BTEC qualifications and of the support and resources that Pearson provides. CDMs often run network events
- Customer Services – the 'Support for You' section of our website gives the different ways in which you can contact us for general queries. For specific queries, our service operators can direct you to the relevant person or department.

Training and professional development

Pearson provides a range of training and professional development events to support the introduction, delivery, assessment and administration of BTEC National qualifications. These sector-specific events, developed and delivered by specialists, are available both face to face and online.

'Getting Ready to Teach'

These events are designed to get teachers ready for delivery of the BTEC Nationals. They include an overview of the qualifications' structures, planning and preparation for internal and external assessment, and quality assurance.

Teaching and learning

Beyond the 'Getting Ready to Teach' professional development events, there are opportunities for teachers to attend sector- and role-specific events. These events are designed to connect practice to theory; they provide teacher support and networking opportunities with delivery, learning and assessment methodology.

Details of our training and professional development programme can be found on our website.

Appendix 1 Links to industry standards

BTEC Nationals have been developed in consultation with industry and appropriate sector bodies to ensure that the qualification content and approach to assessment aligns closely to the needs of employers. Where they exist, and are appropriate, National Occupational Standards (NOS) and professional body standards have been used to establish unit content.

In the countryside management sector, the following approaches have been used:

- the mandatory content has been mapped to NOS to reflect the essential skills and knowledge needed for entry to employment.

Appendix 2 Glossary of terms used for internally-assessed units

This is a summary of the key terms used to define the requirements in the units.

Term	Definition
Analyse	<p>Learners present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination, either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • breaking down a theme, topic or situation in order to interpret and study the interrelationships between the parts and/or • using information or data to interpret and study key trends and interrelationships. <p>Analysis can be through performance, practice, written work or, less commonly, verbal presentation.</p>
Apply	Learners complete practical tasks drawing on their knowledge of concepts and processes.
Assess	Learners present a careful consideration of varied factors or events that apply to a specific situation, or identify those which are the most important or relevant and arrive at a conclusion.
Carry out	Learners demonstrate skills through practical activities, in line with certain requirements. Learners do this in order to complete an identified activity or to demonstrate personal achievement for an audience.
Compare	<p>Learners identify the main factors relating to two or more items/situations or aspects of a subject that is extended to explain the similarities, differences, advantages and disadvantages.</p> <p>This is used to show depth of knowledge through selection and isolation of characteristics.</p>
Demonstrate	Learners' work, performance or practice evidences the ability to carry out and apply knowledge, understanding and/or skills in a practical situation.
Develop	Learners acquire and apply skills and understanding through practical activities that involve the use of concepts, processes or techniques to expand or progress something.

Term	Definition
Evaluate	<p>Learners' work draws on varied information, themes or concepts to consider aspects such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • strengths or weaknesses • advantages or disadvantages • alternative actions • relevance or significance. <p>Learners' enquiries should lead to a supported judgement, showing relationship to its context. This will often be in a conclusion.</p> <p>Evidence of explanations could be through visual explanations with annotations, as well as written work, presentation, performance or practice.</p>
Examine	Learners select and apply knowledge to less familiar contexts.
Explain	Learners' work shows clear detail and gives reasons and/or evidence to support an opinion, view or argument. It could show how conclusions are drawn (arrived at). Learners show that they comprehend the origins, functions and objectives of a subject, and its suitability for purpose.
Explore	Learners apply their skills and/or knowledge in contexts involving practical research or investigation.
Justify	<p>Learners give reasons or evidence to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • support an opinion • prove something right or reasonable.
Perform	Learners demonstrate a range of skills required to complete a given activity.
Plan	Learners create a way of organising a task or a series of tasks to achieve specific requirements or objectives, showing progress from start to finish.
Produce	Learners' knowledge, understanding and/or skills are applied to develop a particular type of evidence, for example a proposal, plan, product, service or report.
Reflect	Learners consider their own performance and/or skills and development in relation to a specific scenario or scenarios and/or wider context(s). This may include feedback from others. There is often a requirement for learners to identify strengths and areas for improvement, along with a personal development or action plan.
Review	<p>Learners make a formal assessment of work produced.</p> <p>The assessment allows learners to appraise existing information or prior events, and reconsider information with the intention of making changes, if necessary.</p>

Term	Definition
Select	Learners choose the best or most suitable option, whether this is of materials, techniques, equipment or processes. The options and choices should be based on specific criteria.
Undertake	Learners demonstrate skills through practical activities, often referring to given processes or techniques.

Type of evidence	Definition and purpose
Case study	A specific example to which all learners must select and apply knowledge. Used to show application to a realistic context where direct experience cannot be gained.
Development log	A record kept by learners to show the process of development. Used to show method, self-management and skill development.
Individual project	A self-directed, large-scale activity requiring planning, research, exploration, outcome and review. Used to show self-management, project management and/or deep learning, including synopticity.
Log	A record made by learners of how a process of development was carried out, including experimental stages, testing, selection and rejection of alternatives, practice or development steps.
Observation record/statement/sheet	Used to provide a formal record of a judgement of learners' performance in practical tasks.
Plan	Learners produce a plan as an outcome related to a given or limited task.
Portfolio	Digital or physical, showing a selection of work that contributes towards a project or for a specific purpose.
Practical task (artefact/outcome)	Learners carry out a defined or self-defined task to produce an outcome.
Presentation	To show presentation skills, including communication. To direct to a given audience and goal. To extract and summarise information.
Project	A large-scale activity requiring planning, research, exploration, outcome and review. Used to show self-management, project management and/or deep learning, including synopticity.
Research	An analysis of substantive research organised by learners from secondary and, if applicable, primary sources.
Written task/report	Individual completion of a task in a work-related format, e.g. a report, marketing communication, set of instructions.

Pearson BTEC Level 3 Nationals in Countryside Management

Extended Certificate in Countryside Management

Foundation Diploma in Countryside Management

Diploma in Countryside Management

Extended Diploma in Countryside Management

For more information about Edexcel, BTEC or LCCI qualifications
visit qualifications.pearson.com

BTEC is a registered trademark of Pearson Education Limited

Pearson Education Limited. Registered in England and Wales No. 872828

Registered Office: 80 Strand, London WC2R 0RL

VAT Reg No GB 278 537121